

# DrayTek

## Vigor2930 Series

Dual-WAN Security Firewall



*Your reliable networking solutions partner*

# User's Guide

**V2.0**

# **Vigor2930 Series Dual-WAN Security Firewall User's Guide**

**Version: 2.0**

**Firmware Version: V3.3.0**

**Date: 22/10/2010**

Copyright 2010 All rights reserved.

This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders. The scope of delivery and other details are subject to change without prior notice.

Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.

Windows, Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, XP, Vista and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.

Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

## Copyright Information

### Copyright Declarations

Copyright 2010 All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.

### Trademarks

The following trademarks are used in this document:

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
- Windows, Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, XP, Vista and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.
- Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

## Safety Instructions and Approval

### Safety Instructions

- Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router.
- The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only by authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself.
- Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom.
- The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius.
- Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources.
- Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards.
- Keep the package out of reach of children.
- When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.

### Warranty

We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary to restore the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

### Be a Registered Owner

Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via <http://www.draytek.com>.

### Firmware & Tools Updates

Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.

<http://www.draytek.com>

## European Community Declarations

Manufacturer: DrayTek Corp.  
Address: No. 26, Fu Shing Road, HuKou Township, HsinChu Industrial Park, Hsin-Chu, Taiwan 303  
Product: Vigor2930 Series Router

DrayTek Corp. declares that Vigor2930 Series of routers are in compliance with the following essential requirements and other relevant provisions of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EEC.

The product conforms to the requirements of Electro-Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) Directive 2004/108/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN55022/Class B and EN55024/Class B.

The product conforms to the requirements of Low Voltage (LVD) Directive 2006/95/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN60950-1.

## Regulatory Information

### Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the use is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device may accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Please visit <http://www.draytek.com/user/AboutRegulatory.php>.



This product is designed for the ISDN and 2.4GHz WLAN network throughout the EC region and Switzerland with restrictions in France. Please see the user manual for the applicable networks on your product.

# Table of Contents

## 1

<b>Preface .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation .....	1
1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors .....	2
1.2.1 For Vigor2930 .....	3
1.2.2 For Vigor2930n .....	4
1.2.3 For Vigor2930Vn .....	6
1.2.4 For Vigor2930VS .....	8
1.2.5 For Vigor2930VSn .....	10
1.3 Hardware Installation .....	12
1.4 ISDN Phone Adapter Installation .....	13

## 2

<b>Configuring Basic Settings .....</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 Changing Password .....	15
2.2 Quick Start Wizard .....	17
2.2.1 PPPoE .....	18
2.2.2 PPTP/L2TP .....	20
2.2.3 Static IP .....	21
2.2.4 DHCP .....	22
2.3 Service Activation Wizard .....	23
2.4 Online Status .....	26
2.5 Saving Configuration .....	28

## 3

<b>Advanced Web Configuration .....</b>	<b>29</b>
3.1 WAN .....	29
3.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network .....	29
3.1.2 General Setup .....	30
3.1.3 Internet Access .....	32
3.1.4 Load-Balance Policy .....	39
3.2 LAN .....	42
3.2.1 Basics of LAN .....	42
3.2.2 General Setup .....	44
3.2.3 Static Route .....	46
3.2.4 VLAN (Monitor) .....	49
3.2.5 Bind IP to MAC .....	50
3.2.6 Web Authentication .....	52
How to use Web Authentication .....	53
3.3 NAT .....	54
3.3.1 Port Redirection .....	54
3.3.2 DMZ Host .....	57

3.3.3 Open Ports.....	60
3.3.4 Address Mapping.....	61
3.4 Firewall.....	63
3.4.1 Basics for Firewall.....	63
3.4.2 General Setup.....	65
3.4.3 Filter Setup .....	68
3.4.4 DoS Defense .....	74
3.5 Objects Settings .....	77
3.5.1 IP Object .....	77
3.5.2 IP Group .....	79
3.5.3 Service Type Object .....	80
3.5.4 Service Type Group.....	81
3.5.5 Keyword Object .....	82
3.5.8 IM Object .....	85
3.5.9 P2P Object.....	86
3.5.10 Protocol Object .....	88
3.5.11 Misc Object.....	89
3.6 CSM .....	91
3.6.1 APP Enforcement Profile.....	91
3.6.2 URL Content Filter Profile.....	92
3.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile.....	96
3.7 Bandwidth Management .....	99
3.7.1 Sessions Limit.....	99
3.7.2 Bandwidth Limit .....	101
3.7.3 Quality of Service.....	102
3.8 Applications .....	109
3.8.1 Dynamic DNS .....	109
3.8.2 Schedule.....	111
3.8.3 RADIUS .....	112
3.8.4 UPnP.....	114
3.8.5 Wake on LAN.....	115
3.9 VPN and Remote Access.....	117
3.9.1 VPN Client Wizard .....	117
3.9.2 VPN Server Wizard.....	123
3.9.3 Remote Access Control.....	127
3.9.4 PPP General Setup .....	128
3.9.5 IPSec General Setup.....	129
3.9.6 IPSec Peer Identity .....	130
3.9.7 Remote Dial-in User .....	132
3.9.8 LAN to LAN.....	137
3.9.10 VPN TRUNK Management.....	146
3.9.11 Connection Management .....	156
3.10 Certificate Management.....	158
3.10.1 Local Certificate .....	158
3.10.2 Trusted CA Certificate .....	162
3.10.3 Certificate Backup.....	163
3.11 VoIP .....	163
3.11.1 DialPlan .....	164
3.11.2 SIP Accounts .....	172
3.11.3 Phone Settings .....	176
3.11.4 Status.....	192

3.12 ISDN.....	193
3.12.1 Basic Concept.....	193
3.12.2 General Settings.....	194
3.12.3 Dial to Single/Dual ISPs.....	197
3.12.4 Call Control.....	200
3.13 Wireless LAN.....	202
3.13.1 Basic Concepts.....	202
3.13.2 General Setup.....	204
3.13.3 Security.....	206
3.13.4 Access Control.....	208
3.13.5 WPS.....	210
3.13.6 WDS.....	212
3.13.7 AP Discovery.....	216
3.13.8 Station List.....	216
3.13.9 Rate Control.....	218
3.13.10 Web Portal Log-in.....	218
3.14 SSL VPN.....	219
3.14.1 General Setup.....	219
3.14.2 SSL Web Proxy.....	220
3.14.3 User Account.....	221
3.14.4 Online User Status.....	223
3.15 System Maintenance.....	223
3.15.1 System Status.....	224
3.15.2 TR-069 Setting.....	226
3.15.3 Administrator Password.....	227
3.15.4 Configuration Backup.....	228
3.15.5 Syslog/Mail Alert.....	230
3.15.6 Time and Date.....	231
3.15.7 Management.....	233
3.15.8 Reboot System.....	234
3.15.9 Firmware Upgrade.....	235
3.15.10 Activation.....	235
3.16 Diagnostics.....	237
3.16.1 Dial-out Trigger.....	237
3.16.2 Routing Table.....	238
3.16.3 ARP Cache Table.....	238
3.16.4 DHCP Table.....	239
3.16.5 NAT Sessions Table.....	239
3.16.6 Web Authentication Table.....	240
3.16.7 Data Flow Monitor.....	240
3.16.8 Traffic Graph.....	243
3.16.9 Ping Diagnosis.....	244
3.16.10 Trace Route.....	245

# 4

<b>Application and Examples.....</b>	<b>247</b>
4.1 Create a LAN-to-LAN Connection Between Remote Office and Headquarter.....	247
4.2 Create a Remote Dial-in User Connection Between the Teleworker and Headquarter.....	255
4.3 QoS Setting Example.....	259
4.4 LAN – Created by Using NAT.....	263
4.5 Calling Scenario for VoIP function.....	265

4.5.1 Calling via SIP Sever .....	265
4.5.2 Peer-to-Peer Calling .....	267
4.6 Upgrade Firmware for Your Router .....	268
4.7 Request a certificate from a CA server on Windows CA Server .....	270
4.8 Request a CA Certificate and Set as Trusted on Windows CA Server .....	274
4.9 Creating an Account for MyVigor .....	276
4.9.1 Creating an Account via Vigor Router .....	276
4.9.2 Creating an Account via MyVigor Web Site.....	280

# 5

<b>Trouble Shooting .....</b>	<b>285</b>
5.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not.....	285
5.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not .....	286
5.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer .....	288
5.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not.....	289
5.5 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary .....	289
5.6 Contacting Your Dealer .....	290

# 1

## Preface

Vigor2930 is a broadband router with dual-WAN interface. It provides policy-based load-balance, fail-over and BOD (Bandwidth on Demand), also it integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform, hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DS and hardware key hash of SHA-1/MD5, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly, and offers several protocols (such as IPSec/PPTP/L2TP) with up to 100 VPN tunnels.

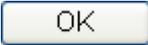
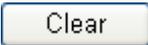
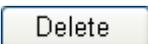
The object-originated design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy with ease. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside.

Vigor2930 “S” series models support two ISDN ports. ISDN S0 (1) port is dedicated for ISDN phone and ISDN S0 (2) port is configurable for ISDN line and phone if required. It can support multiple SIP registrars with high flexible configuration and call handling options.

Object-oriented firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe. In addition, through VoIP function, the communication fee for you and remote people can be reduced.

### 1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation

Several main buttons appeared on the web pages are defined as the following:

	Save and apply current settings.
	Cancel current settings and recover to the previous saved settings.
	Clear all the selections and parameters settings, including selection from drop-down list. All the values must be reset with factory default settings.
	Add new settings for specified item.
	Edit the settings for the selected item.
	Delete the selected item with the corresponding settings.

**Note:** For the other buttons shown on the web pages, please refer to Chapter 4 for detailed explanation.

## 1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors

Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first.

The displays of LED indicators and connectors for the routers are different slightly. The following sections will introduce them respectively.

### Definitions for ISDN Ports

Below shows the names that displayed on front panel of the device and the WEB UI of this device.

**ISDN TE** (Terminal Equipment) means an interface for transmitting analog signal through Internet between Switching and router. Such interface is also named with **ISDN S0 extern** in Germany.

**ISDN NT** (Network Terminator) is a port that used to connect general phone. Such interface is also named with **ISDN S0 intern** in Germany.

The **ISDN S0 (1)** port on Vigor2930 series is fixed to connect phone forever and the LED on the connector will light orange always. However **ISDN S0 (2)** port on this device is configurable for connecting phone or accessing Internet according to the settings that you adjust on WEB UI (please refer to **VoIP>>Phone Setting** for detailed information).



**Warning:** When the orange LED lights (means ISDN NT mode), the ISDN port can be used to connect phone only. Wrong ISDN connection might cause severe damage on your device.

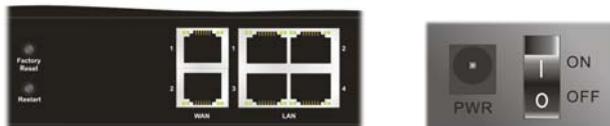
## 1.2.1 For Vigor2930



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
DoS	On	The DoS/DDoS function is active.
	Blinking	It will blink while deleting an attack.
CSM	On	The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; IM/P2P Profile</b> ).
CPA (Content Portal Authority)	On	The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; Web Content Filter Profile</b> ).
WAN1/2	On	The WAN1 or WAN2 port is connected.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
MGMT	On	The router is managed (handled) by Telnet.
	Blinking	It will blink while being managed by IE browser.
VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
QoS	On	The QoS function is active.

### LED on Connector

WAN 1/2	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
		Off	The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
LAN 1/2/3/4	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
		Off	The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.



Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
Restart	Restart the router forcefully.
WAN(1/2)	Connectors for remote networked devices.
LAN (1-4)	Connectors for local networked devices.
PWR	Connector for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

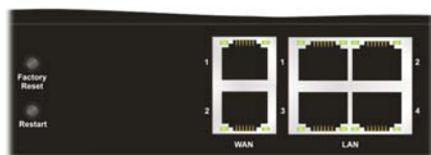
## 1.2.2 For Vigor2930n



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
DoS	On	The DoS/DDoS function is active.
	Blinking	It will blink while deleting an attack.
CSM	On	The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; IM/P2P Profile</b> ).
WLAN	On	Wireless access point is ready.
	Blinking	It will blink while wireless traffic goes through. It will blink fast when WPS is working and it will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.)
WAN1/2	On	The WAN1 or WAN2 port is connected.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
MGMT	On	The router is managed (handled) by Telnet.
	Blinking	It will blink while being managed by IE browser.
VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
QoS	On	The QoS function is active.

### LED on Connector

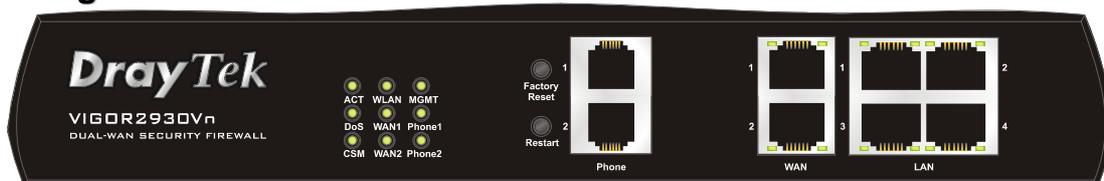
WAN 1/2	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
		Off	The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
LAN 1/2/3/4	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
		Off	The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.



Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Press "Factory Reset" button once to make network connection through WPS. Press "Factory Reset" button twice to enable or disable WLAN function. Press "Factory Reset" button for 5 seconds to do the factory reset. Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
Restart	Restart the router forcefully.
Phone (1/2)	Connecters for PSTN phones.
WAN (1/2)	Connecters for remote networked devices.

LAN (1-4)	Connecters for local networked devices.
PWR	Connector for a power adapter..
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

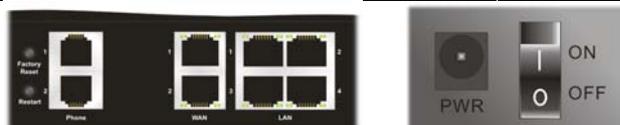
## 1.2.3 For Vigor2930Vn



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
DoS	On	The DoS/DDoS function is active.
	Blinking	It will blink while deleting an attack.
CSM	On	The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; IM/P2P Profile</b> ).
WLAN	On	Wireless access point is ready.
	Blinking	It will blink while wireless traffic goes through. It will blink fast when WPS is working and it will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.)
WAN1/2	On	The WAN1 or WAN2 port is connected.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
MGMT	On	The router is managed (handled) by Telnet.
	Blinking	It will blink while being managed by IE browser.
Phone 1/2	On	The phone connected to this port is off-hook.
	Off	The phone connected to this port is on-hook.
	Blinking	A phone call comes.

### LED on Connector

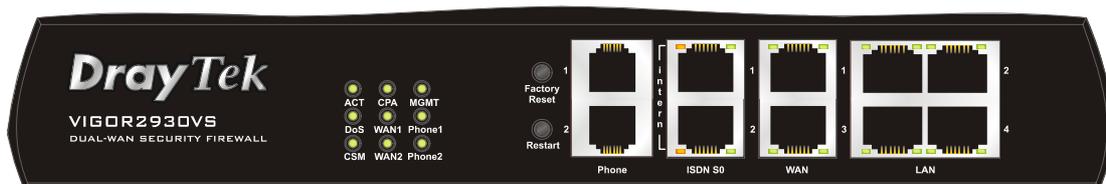
WAN 1/2	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
Off		The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.	
LAN 1/2/3/4	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
Off		The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.	



Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Press "Factory Reset" button once to make network connection through WPS. Press "Factory Reset" button twice to enable or disable WLAN function. Press "Factory Reset" button for 5 seconds to do the factory reset. Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
Restart	Restart the router forcefully.
Phone (1/2)	Connecters for PSTN phones.
WAN (1/2)	Connecters for remote networked devices.

LAN (1-4)	Connecters for local networked devices.
PWR	Connector for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

## 1.2.4 For Vigor2930VS



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
DoS	On	The DoS/DDoS function is active.
	Blinking	It will blink while deleting an attack.
CSM	On	The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; IM/P2P Profile</b> ).
CPA (Content Portal Authority)	On	The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; Web Content Filter Profile</b> )
WAN1/2	On	The WAN1 or WAN2 port is connected.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
MGMT	On	The router is managed (handled) by Telnet.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
Phone 1/2	On	The phone connected to this port is off-hook.
	Off	The phone connected to this port is on-hook.
	Blinking	A phone call comes.

### LED on Connector

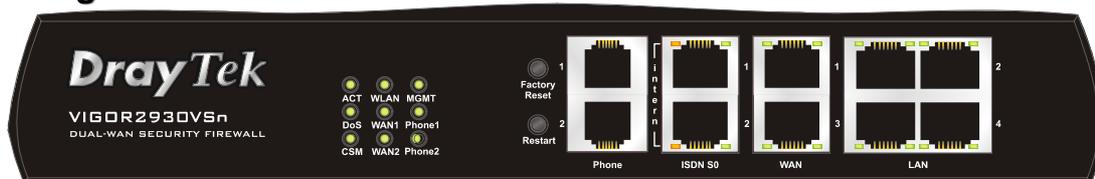
ISDN S0 1	Left LED (Orange)	On	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode is active and an ISDN phone adapter is connected.
		Blinking	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode is active and an ISDN phone adapter is not connected.
	Right LED (Green)	On	A phone has been connected. If not, green LED will be off.
		Blinking	An ISDN phone is off-hook or a phone call comes.
ISDN S0 2	Left LED (Orange)	On	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode is active configured from <b>VoIP&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> and an ISDN phone adapter is connected.
		Blinking	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode configured from <b>VoIP&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> is active and an ISDN phone adapter is not connected.
		Off	It means ISDN TE mode is active which is configured from <b>VoIP&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> .
	Right LED (Green)	On	A phone adapter with phone set has been connected (ISDN S0 intern mode) or ISDN line has been connected (ISDN S0 extern mode). It will be off if there is nothing connected.
		Blinking	In ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode, it means an ISDN phone is off-hook or a phone call comes. In ISDN TE mode, it means data, fax or voice (phone call) is transmitting.
		Off	
WAN 1/2	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
		Off	The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.
		Blinking	

LAN 1/2/3/4	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
Off		The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.	



Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
Restart	Restart the router forcefully.
Phone (1/2)	Connecters for PSTN phones.
ISDN S0 1	Connecter for ISDN phone(s) only via ISDN phone adapter. Do not connect any other device to such port or connect ISDN line, otherwise the router might be damaged.
ISDN S0 2	Connecter for ISDN line or ISDN phone adapter in particular condition. Refer to section 2.2 for more details.
WAN (1/2)	Connecters for remote networked devices.
LAN (1-4)	Connecters for local networked devices.
PWR	Connector for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

## 1.2.5 For Vigor2930VSn



LED	Status	Explanation
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is powered off.
DoS	On	The DoS/DDoS function is active.
	Blinking	It will blink while deleting an attack.
CSM	On	The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is active. (It is enabled from <b>CSM &gt;&gt; IM/P2P Profile</b> ).
WLAN	On	Wireless access point is ready.
	Blinking	It will blink while wireless traffic goes through. It will blink fast when WPS is working and it will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.)
WAN1/2	On	The WAN1 or WAN2 port is connected.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
MGMT	On	The router is managed (handled) by Telnet.
	Blinking	It will blink while being managed by IE browser.
Phone 1/2	On	The phone connected to this port is off-hook.
	Off	The phone connected to this port is on-hook.
	Blinking	A phone call comes.

### LED on Connector

ISDN S0 1	Left LED (Orange)	On	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode is active and an ISDN phone adapter is connected.
		Blinking	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode is active and an ISDN phone adapter is not connected.
	Right LED (Green)	On	A phone has been connected. If not, green LED will be off.
		Blinking	An ISDN phone is off-hook or a phone call comes.
ISDN S0 2	Left LED (Orange)	On	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode is active configured from <b>VoIP&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> and an ISDN phone adapter is connected.
		Blinking	ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode configured from <b>VoIP&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> is active and an ISDN phone adapter is not connected.
		Off	It means ISDN TE mode is active which is configured from <b>VoIP&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> .
	Right LED (Green)	On	A phone adapter with phone set has been connected (ISDN S0 intern mode) or ISDN line has been connected (ISDN S0 extern mode). It will be off if there is nothing connected.
		Blinking	In ISDN NT (ISDN S0 intern) mode, it means an ISDN phone is off-hook or a phone call comes. In ISDN TE mode, it means data, fax or voice (phone call) is transmitting.
		Off	
WAN 1/2	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.

	(Green)	Off	The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.
LAN 1/2/3/4	Left LED (Green)	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED (Green)	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
Off		The port is disconnected with 10Mbps.	



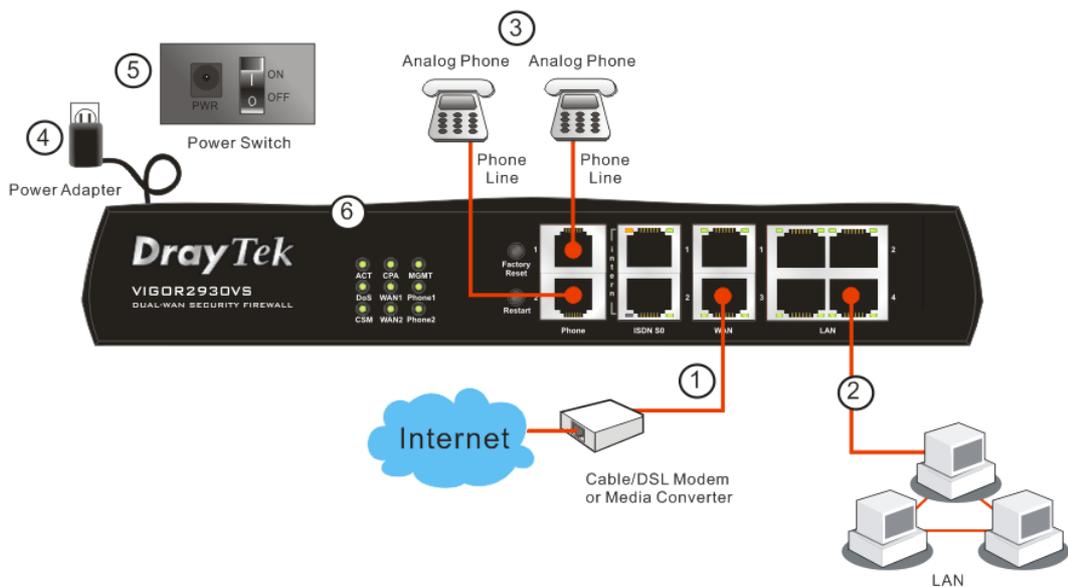
Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Press "Factory Reset" button once to make network connection through WPS Press "Factory Reset" button twice to enable or disable WLAN function. Press "Factory Reset" button for 5 seconds to do the factory reset. Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
Restart	Restart the router forcefully.
Phone (1/2)	Connecters for PSTN phones.
ISDN S0 1	Connector for ISDN phone(s) only via ISDN phone adapter. Do not connect any other device to such port or connect ISDN line, otherwise the router might be damaged.
ISDN S0 2	Connector for ISDN line or ISDN phone adapter in particular condition. Refer to section 2.2 for more details.
WAN (1/2)	Connecters for remote networked devices.
LAN (1-4)	Connecters for local networked devices.
PWR	Connector for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

## 1.3 Hardware Installation

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly.

1. Connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to any WAN port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45). The **WAN1/WAN2 LED** (Left or Right) will light up according to the speed (100 or 10) of the device that it connected.
2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to one of the **LAN** ports of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer. The **LAN LED** (Left or Right) will light up according to the speed (100 or 10) of the device that it connected.
3. Connect the telephone sets with phone lines (for using VoIP function). For the model without phone ports, skip this step.
4. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.
5. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.
6. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the **ACT LED** will light up and start blinking.

(For the detailed information of LED status, please refer to section 1.2.)

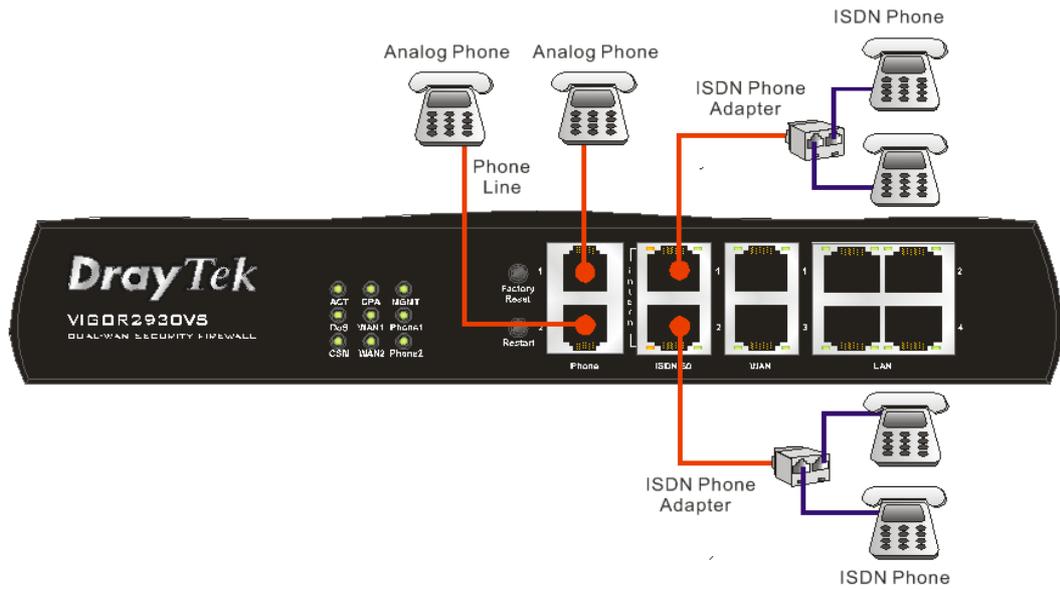


**Caution:** Each of the Phone ports can be connected to an analog phone only. Do not connect the phone ports to the telephone wall jack. Such connection might damage your router.

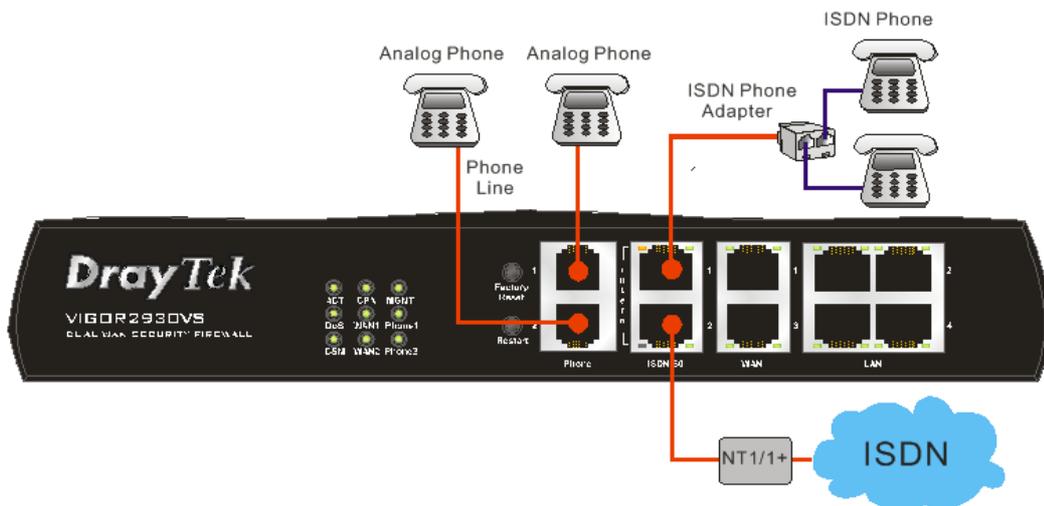
## 1.4 ISDN Phone Adapter Installation

Such information is provided for Vigor2930 S models (e.g., Vigor2930VS).

ISDN S0 1 is always fixed to connect ISDN phone. However, ISDN S0 2 is configurable as ISDN line or ISDN phone. When the user configures ISDN S0 2 as ISDN phone in **VoIP>> Phone Settings**, the **orange** LED will light on to indicate **ISDN2-S0** mode is selected. And by using ISDN phone adapters (coming from the router package), the user can connect several phones (the maximum is six) to Vigor2930VS for communication. Refer to the following figure for reference.



However, if the user configures ISDN S0 2 as ISDN line in **VoIP>> Phone Settings**, the **green** LED will light on to indicate ISDN2-TE mode is selected. Then, the port is specified for ISDN line only. Refer to the following figure for reference.



This page is left blank.

# 2

## Configuring Basic Settings

For use the router properly, it is necessary for you to change the password of web configuration for security and adjust primary basic settings.

This chapter explains how to setup a password for an administrator and how to adjust basic settings for accessing Internet successfully. Be aware that only the administrator can change the router configuration.

### 2.1 Changing Password

To change the password for this device, you have to access into the web browse with default password first.

1. Make sure your computer connects to the router correctly.

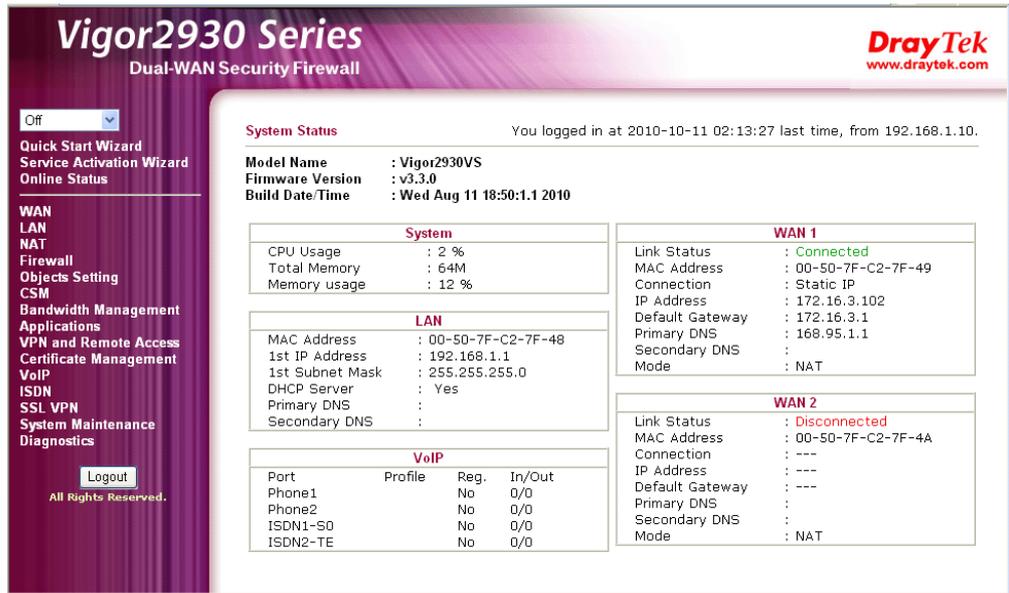


**Notice:** You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as **the default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of this guide.

2. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password. Please type default values (both username and password are Null) on the window for the first time accessing and click **OK** for next screen.



3. Now, the **Main Screen** will pop up.



**Note:** The home page will change slightly in accordance with the router you have.

- Go to **System Maintenance** page and choose **Administrator Password**.

[System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup](#)

#### Administrator Password

Old Password	<input type="text"/>
New Password	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="text"/>

- Enter the login password (the default is blank) on the field of **Old Password**. Type a new one in the field of **New Password** and retype it on the field of **Retype New Password**. Then click **OK** to continue.
- Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web Configurator for this router.



## 2.2 Quick Start Wizard

If your router can be under an environment with high speed NAT, the configuration provide here can help you to deploy and use the router quickly. The first screen of **Quick Start Wizard** is entering login password. After typing the password, please click **Next**.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Enter login password

Please enter an alpha-numeric string as your **Password** (Max 23 characters).

New Password

Confirm Password

On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface that you use. Choose **Auto negotiation** as the physical type for your router. Then click **Next** for next step.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Select WAN Interface

Select WAN Interface:

Display Name:

Physical Mode: Ethernet

Physical Type:

- Auto negotiation
- 10M half duplex
- 10M full duplex
- 100M half duplex
- 100M full duplex

On the next page as shown below, please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. Then click **Next** for next step.

## Quick Start Wizard

**Connect to Internet**

**WAN 1**  
Select one of the following Internet Access types provided by your ISP.

PPPoE  
 PPTP  
 L2TP  
 Static IP  
 DHCP

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

In the **Quick Start Wizard**, you can configure the router to access the Internet with different protocol/modes such as **PPPoE**, **PPTP**, **L2TP**, **Static IP** or **DHCP**. The router supports the DSL WAN interface for Internet access.

### 2.2.1 PPPoE

PPPoE stands for **Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet**. It relies on two widely accepted standards: PPP and Ethernet. It connects users through an Ethernet to the Internet with a common broadband medium, such as a single DSL line, wireless device or cable modem. All the users over the Ethernet can share a common connection.

PPPoE is used for most of DSL modem users. All local users can share one PPPoE connection for accessing the Internet. Your service provider will provide you information about user name, password, and authentication mode.

If your ISP provides you the **PPPoE** connection, please select **PPPoE** for this router. The following page will be shown:

#### Quick Start Wizard

**PPPoE Client Mode**

**WAN 1**  
Enter the user name and password provided by your ISP.

User Name      84005755@hinet.net  
Password      ●●●●●●●●  
Confirm Password      ●●●●●●●●

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

<b>User Name</b>	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP.
<b>Password</b>	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP.
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Retype the password.

Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

#### Quick Start Wizard

---

**Please confirm your settings:**

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPPoE

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!**

## 2.2.2 PPTP/L2TP

Click **PPTP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### PPTP Client Mode

**WAN 1**  
Enter the user name, password, WAN IP configuration and PPTP server IP provided by your ISP.

User Name	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
WAN IP Configuration	
<input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address	
IP Address	<input type="text" value="172.16.3.102"/>
Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/>
Gateway	<input type="text" value="172.16.3.1"/>
Primary DNS	<input type="text"/>
Second DNS	<input type="text"/>
PPTP Server	<input type="text"/>

Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPTP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!**

## 2.2.3 Static IP

Click **Static IP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### Static IP Client Mode

<b>WAN 1</b>	
Enter the Static IP configuration provided by your ISP.	
WAN IP	<input type="text" value="172.16.3.229"/>
Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
Gateway	<input type="text" value="172.16.3.1"/>
Primary DNS	<input type="text" value="168.95.1.1"/>
Secondary DNS	<input type="text"/> (optional)

After finishing the settings in this page, click **Next** to see the following page.

### Quick Start Wizard

---

#### Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	Static IP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!**

## 2.2.4 DHCP

Click **DHCP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

**Quick Start Wizard**

### DHCP Client Mode

#### WAN 1

If your ISP require you to enter a specific host name or specific MAC address, please enter it in.

Host Name  (optional)  
MAC   -   -   -   -   (optional)

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

After finishing the settings in this page, click **Next** to see the following page.

**Quick Start Wizard**

### Please confirm your settings:

WAN Interface: WAN1  
Physical Mode: Ethernet  
Physical Type: Auto negotiation  
Internet Access: DHCP

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and restart the Vigor router.

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

**Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!**

## 2.3 Service Activation Wizard

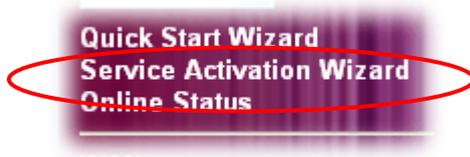
Service Activation Wizard can guide you to set WCF (Web Content Feature) feature with a quick way.

**Note:** There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

Service Activation Wizard is a tool which allows you to use trial version or update the license of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. For using Web Content Filter Profile, please refer to section **3.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile** for detailed information.

Now, please follow the steps listed below to activate WCF feature for your router.

1. Open **Service Activation Wizard**.



2. The screen of **Service Activation Wizard** will be shown as follows. Choose the one you need and click **Next**. In this case, we choose to activate free trail edition.

### Service Activation Wizard

#### Select the service type that you want to activate

This wizard is used for activating  
- Web Content Filter  
Please choose the edition you need.

- Free trial edition  
 Formal edition with license key

Next >

Finish

Cancel

**Free trial edition:** it offers a period of trial for you to get acquainted with WCF function.

**Formal edition with license key:** you can extend the license valid time manually.

**Note:** If you activate **Formal edition with license key** first, the free trial edition will be invalid.

- In the following page, you can activate the Web content filter service at the same time or individually. When you finish the selection, please click **Next**. In this case, Web Content Filter (BPjM) is selected.

**Service Activation Wizard**

**Select the service type that you want to activate**

This product provides 30 days of free trial, please choose the item(s) you want to use.

**For WCF service:**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web Content Filter ( BPjM )	Activation Date : <input type="text" value="2010-10-18"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Web Content Filter ( Commtouch )	Activation Date : <input type="text" value="2010-10-18"/>

      >

- Setting confirmation page will be displayed as follows, please click **Next**.

**Service Activation Wizard**

**Please confirm your settings**

Service Type : Trial version  
Service Activated : Web Content Filter ( BPjM )

Please click **Back** to re-select service type you to activate.

      >

- Wait for a moment till the following page appears.

**Service Activation Wizard**

**Connection Succeeded!**

Please check the following item(s) to enable the AI/AV or WCF or AS services on your router.

Enable Web Content Filter

  >

When such page appears, you can enable or disable these services for your necessity. Then, click **Finish**.

**Note:** The service will be activated and applied as the default rule configured in **Firewall>>General Setup**.

6. Now, the web page will display the service that you have activated according to your selection(s). The valid time for the free trial of these services is one month.

**Service Activation Wizard**

**Server Enabled!**

**DrayTek Service Activation**

Service Name	Start Date	Expire Date	Status
Web Content filter	2010-10-18	2010-11-18	BPjM

Please check if the license fits with the service provider of your signature. To ensure normal operation for your router, update your signature again is recommended.

Copyright © DrayTek Corp. All Rights Reserved.

Later, if you need to extend the license valid time, you can also use the **Service Activation Wizard** again to reach your goal by clicking the radio button of **Formal edition with license key** and clicking **Next**.

**Service Activation Wizard**

**Select the service type that you want to activate**

This wizard is used for activating  
- Web Content Filter  
Please choose the edition you need.

Free trial edition  
 **Formal edition with license key**

**Service Activation Wizard**

**Select the service type that you want to activate**

Please choose the item you want to use.  
For WCF service:

Web Content Filter (BPjM)     [License Agreement](#)     Activation Date : 2010-11-19     [select](#)  
 Enter your License key:

Web Content Filter (CommTouch)     [License Agreement](#)     Activation Date : 2010-10-18     [select](#)  
 Enter your License key:

I have read and accept the above Agreement.(Please check this box.)

**Note** :The activation date is brought out by the server automatically and cannot be changed.

## 2.4 Online Status

The online status shows the system status, WAN status, ADSL Information and other status related to this router within one page. If you select **PPPoE/PPTP** as the protocol, you will find out a link of **Dial PPPoE/PPPoA** or **Drop PPPoE/PPPoA** in the Online Status web page.

### Online status for PPPoE

Online Status

System Status					System Uptime: 0:0:41	
<b>LAN Status</b>		Primary DNS: 61.31.233.1		Secondary DNS: 139.175.55.244		
IP Address		TX Packets		RX Packets		
192.168.50.111		240		210		
<b>WAN 1 Status</b>					<a href="#">&gt;&gt; Drop PPPoE</a>	
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:00:00		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate	
219.81.160.205	211.78.218.40	6	29	6	12	
<b>WAN 2 Status</b>						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet		Static IP	0:00:32		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate	
192.168.4.103	192.168.4.1	1	3	1	9	

### Online status for PPTP (for WAN2)

Online Status

System Status					System Uptime: 0:12:8	
<b>LAN Status</b>		Primary DNS: 194.109.6.66		Secondary DNS: 194.98.0.1		
IP Address		TX Packets		RX Packets		
192.168.50.111		4910		3663		
<b>WAN 1 Status</b>						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet	WAN1	Static IP	0:10:08		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate	
192.168.22.111	192.168.22.105	91	21	99	3	
<b>WAN 2 Status</b>					<a href="#">&gt;&gt; Drop PPTP</a>	
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet	WAN2	PPTP	0:00:15		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate	
192.168.29.202	192.168.29.1	103	119	14	6	

### Online status for Static IP (for WAN1)

Online Status

System Status					System Uptime: 0:12:8	
<b>LAN Status</b>		Primary DNS: 194.109.6.66		Secondary DNS: 194.98.0.1		
IP Address		TX Packets		RX Packets		
192.168.50.111		4910		3663		
<b>WAN 1 Status</b>						
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet	WAN1	Static IP	0:10:08		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate	
192.168.22.111	192.168.22.105	91	21	99	3	
<b>WAN 2 Status</b>					<a href="#">&gt;&gt; Drop PPTP</a>	
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time		
Yes	Ethernet	WAN2	PPTP	0:00:15		
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate	
192.168.29.202	192.168.29.1	103	119	14	6	

## Online status for DHCP

### Online Status

System Status			System Uptime: 0:1:57		
<b>LAN Status</b>		<b>Primary DNS:</b> 168.95.1.1		<b>Secondary DNS:</b> 168.95.1.1	
<b>IP Address</b>	<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>			
192.168.50.111	856	783			
<b>WAN 1 Status</b>					<a href="#">&gt;&gt; Release</a>
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Line</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	Ethernet		DHCP Client	0:01:49	
<b>IP</b>	<b>GW IP</b>	<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>TX Rate</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>RX Rate</b>
192.168.22.10	192.168.22.105	3	3	7	9
<b>WAN 2 Status</b>					<a href="#">&gt;&gt; Drop PPPoE</a>
<b>Enable</b>	<b>Line</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Mode</b>	<b>Up Time</b>	
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:01:39	
<b>IP</b>	<b>GW IP</b>	<b>TX Packets</b>	<b>TX Rate</b>	<b>RX Packets</b>	<b>RX Rate</b>
202.211.100.176	202.211.100.170	35	8	46	4

Detailed explanation is shown below:

<b>Primary DNS</b>	Displays the IP address of the primary DNS.
<b>Secondary DNS</b>	Displays the IP address of the secondary DNS.
<b>LAN Status</b>	
<b>IP Address</b>	Displays the IP address of the LAN interface.
<b>TX Packets</b>	Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.
<b>RX Packets</b>	Displays the total number of received packets at the LAN interface.
<b>WAN1/2 Status</b>	
<b>Line</b>	Displays the physical connection (Ethernet) of this interface.
<b>Name</b>	Displays the name set in WAN1/WAN web page.
<b>Mode</b>	Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE).
<b>Up Time</b>	Displays the total uptime of the interface.
<b>IP</b>	Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.
<b>GW IP</b>	Displays the IP address of the default gateway.
<b>TX Packets</b>	Displays the total transmitted packets at the WAN interface.
<b>TX Rate</b>	Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface.
<b>RX Packets</b>	Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface.
<b>RX Rate</b>	Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.
<b>ISDN Status</b>	
<b>Channel Active Conn.</b>	Displays the active connection status for each channel.
<b>TX Pkts</b>	Displays the total transmitted packets at the ISDN interface.
<b>TX Rate</b>	Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the ISDN interface.
<b>RX Pkts</b>	Displays the total number of received packets at the ISDN interface.
<b>RX Rate</b>	Displays the speed of received octets at the ISDN interface.
<b>Up Time</b>	Displays the total uptime of the interface.
<b>AOC</b>	Displays the charge information of the interface.

**Dial ISDN** Allows you to dial ISDN connection.

**Drop B1/B2** Allows you to drop B1 or B2 connection.

**Note:** The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface (WAN1/WAN2) is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface (WAN1/WAN2) is not ready for accessing Internet.

## 2.5 Saving Configuration

Each time you click **OK** on the web page for saving the configuration, you can find messages showing the system interaction with you.



**Ready** indicates the system is ready for you to input settings.

**Settings Saved** means your settings are saved once you click **Finish** or **OK** button.

# 3

## Advanced Web Configuration

After finished basic configuration of the router, you can access Internet with ease. For the people who want to adjust more setting for suiting his/her request, please refer to this chapter for getting detailed information about the advanced configuration of this router. As for other examples of application, please refer to chapter 4.

### 3.1 WAN

**Quick Start Wizard** offers user an easy method to quick setup the connection mode for the router. Moreover, if you want to adjust more settings for different WAN modes, please go to **WAN** group and click the **Internet Access** link.

#### 3.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as *private* IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

**From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255**

**From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255**

**From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255**

#### What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

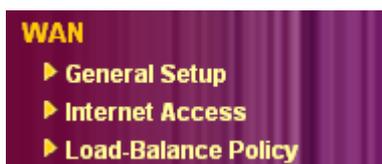
As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

#### Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

Below shows the menu items for Internet Access.



### 3.1.2 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1 and WAN2 in details.

This router supports dual WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the dual WAN to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port can connect to different ISPs, Even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1 and WAN2 settings.

This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1 and WAN2 respectively.

**Note:** In default, WAN1 and WAN2 are enabled.

WAN >> General Setup

**General Setup**

WAN1	WAN2
Enable: <input type="button" value="Yes"/>	Enable: <input type="button" value="Yes"/>
Display Name: <input type="text"/>	Display Name: <input type="text"/>
Physical Mode: Ethernet	Physical Mode: Ethernet
Physical Type: <input type="button" value="Auto negotiation"/>	Physical Type: <input type="button" value="Auto negotiation"/>
Load Balance Mode: <input type="button" value="Auto Weight"/>	Load Balance Mode: <input type="button" value="Auto Weight"/>
Line Speed(Kbps): DownLink <input type="text"/>	Line Speed(Kbps): DownLink <input type="text"/>
UpLink <input type="text"/>	UpLink <input type="text"/>
Active Mode: <input type="button" value="Always On"/>	Active Mode: <input type="button" value="Always On"/>
Active on demand: <input type="radio"/> WAN2 Fail <input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN2 Upload speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps WAN2 Download speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps	Active on demand: <input type="radio"/> WAN1 Fail <input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN1 Upload speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps WAN1 Download speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps

OK

**Enable**

Choose **Yes** to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.

**Display Name**

Type the description for the WAN1/WAN2 interface.

**Physical Mode**

For WAN1, the physical connection is done through ADSL port; yet the physical connection for WAN2 is done through an Ethernet port (P1). You cannot change it.

## Physical Type

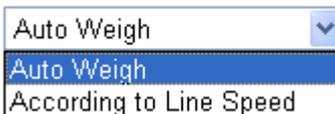
You can change the physical type for WAN2 or choose **Auto negotiation** for determined by the system.

Physical Type: 

The dropdown menu shows the following options: Auto negotiation (selected), 10M half duplex, 10M full duplex, 100M half duplex, and 100M full duplex.

## Load Balance Mode

If you know the practical bandwidth for your WAN interface, please choose the setting of **According to Line Speed**. Otherwise, please choose **Auto Weigh** to let the router reach the best load balance.

Load Balance Mode: 

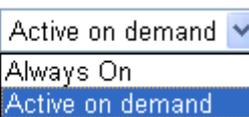
The dropdown menu shows the following options: Auto Weigh (selected) and According to Line Speed.

## Line Speed

If your choose **According to Line Speed** as the **Load Balance Mode**, please type the line speed for downloading and uploading through WAN1/WAN2. The unit is kbps.

## Active Mode

Choose **Always On** to make the WAN connection (WAN1/WAN2) being activated always; or choose **Active on demand** to make the WAN connection (WAN1/WAN2) activated if it is necessary.

Active Mode: 

The dropdown menu shows the following options: Active on demand (selected), Always On, and Active on demand.

If you choose Active on demand, the Idle Timeout will be available for you to set for PPPoE and PPTP access modes in the Details Page of **WAN>>Internet Access**. In addition, there are three selections for you to choose for different purposes.

**WAN2 Fail** – It means the connection for WAN1 will be activated when WAN2 is failed.

**WAN2 Upload speed exceed XX kbps** – It means the connection for WAN1 will be activated when WAN2 Upload speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

**WAN2 Download speed exceed XX kbps**– It means the connection for WAN1 will be activated when WAN2 Download speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

**WAN1 Fail** – It means the connection for WAN2 will be activated when WAN1 is failed.

**WAN1 Upload speed exceed XX kbps** – It means the connection for WAN2 will be activated when WAN1 Upload speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

**WAN1 Download speed exceed XX kbps**– It means the connection for WAN2 will be activated when WAN1 Download speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

### 3.1.3 Internet Access

For the router supports dual WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1/WAN2) for Internet Access. Due to different physical mode for WAN1 and WAN2, the Access Mode for these two connections also varies slightly.

**WAN >> Internet Access**

Internet Access			
Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode
WAN1		Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP <input type="button" value="Details Page"/>
WAN2		Ethernet	None <input type="button" value="Details Page"/>

**Index**

It shows the WAN modes that this router supports. WAN1 is the default WAN interface for accessing into the Internet. WAN2 is the optional WAN interface for accessing into the Internet when WAN 1 is inactive for some reason.

**Display Name**

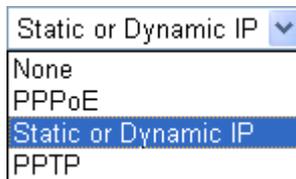
It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2 that entered in general setup.

**Physical Mode**

It shows the physical port for WAN1/WAN2.

**Access Mode**

Use the drop down list to choose a proper access mode. The details page of that mode will be popped up. If not, click Details Page for accessing the page to configure the settings.



There are three access modes provided for PPPoE, Static or Dynamic IP and PPTP.

**Details Page**

This button will open different web page according to the access mode that you choose in WAN1 or WAN2.

## Details Page for PPPoE

To use **PPPoE** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **PPPoE** mode for WAN2. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 1**

<p><b>PPPoE Client Mode</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <hr/> <p><b>ISP Access Setup</b></p> <p>Username <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text"/></p> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: =&gt; <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b></p> <p>Dial Backup Mode <input type="text" value="None"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>WAN Connection Detection</b></p> <p>Mode <input type="text" value="Ping Detect"/></p> <p>Ping IP <input type="text" value="172.16.3.1"/></p> <p>TTL: <input type="text" value="255"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>MTU</b> <input type="text" value="1442"/> (Max: 1492)</p>	<p><b>PPP/MP Setup</b></p> <p>PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/></p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)</p> <hr/> <p><b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/></p> <p>Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)</p> <p>Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address</p> <p>MAC Address: <input type="text" value="00"/> <input type="text" value="50"/> <input type="text" value="7F"/> <input type="text" value="C2"/> <input type="text" value="7F"/> <input type="text" value="49"/></p>
--	--

OK Cancel

### PPPoE Client Mode

Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

### ISP Access Setup

Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. If you want to connect to Internet all the time, you can check **Always On**.

**Username** – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.

**Password** – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup** - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Application >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

### ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **ISDN > Dialing to a Single ISP** to create the backup profile.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

This setting is available for *i* model only.

### WAN Connection

Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.

## Detection

**Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection.

**Ping IP** – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.

**TTL (Time to Live)** – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.

## MTU

Mean maximum transmission unit of one packet. The default value is 1442.

## PPP/MP Setup

**PPP Authentication** – Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.

**Idle Timeout** – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. This setting is active only when the **Active on demand** option for Active Mode is selected in **WAN>> General Setup** page.

## IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)

Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only.

Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Join NAT IP Pool
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172.16.3.229	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear All Close

**Fixed IP** – Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

**Default MAC Address** – You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.

**Specify a MAC Address** – Type the MAC address for the router manually.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP

For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **Static or Dynamic IP** mode for WAN2. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 1**

<p><b>Static or Dynamic IP</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable</p> <hr/> <p><b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b></p> <p>Dial Backup Mode: <input type="text" value="None"/> ▾</p> <hr/> <p><b>Keep WAN Connection</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive</p> <p>PING to the IP: <input type="text"/></p> <p>PING Interval: <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)</p> <hr/> <p><b>WAN Connection Detection</b></p> <p>Mode: <input type="text" value="Ping Detect"/> ▾</p> <p>Ping IP: <input type="text" value="172.16.3.1"/></p> <p>TTL: <input type="text" value="255"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>MTU</b></p> <p><input type="text" value="1442"/> (Max: 1500)</p> <hr/> <p><b>RIP Protocol</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP</p>	<p><b>WAN IP Network Settings</b> <span style="float: right;">WAN IP Alias</span></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP Client)</p> <p>Router Name: <input type="text"/> *</p> <p>Domain Name: <input type="text"/> *</p> <p><small>* : Required for some ISPs</small></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address</p> <p>IP Address: <input type="text" value="172.16.3.102"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/></p> <p>Gateway IP Address: <input type="text" value="172.16.3.1"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>DNS Server IP Address</b></p> <p>Primary IP Address: <input type="text" value="168.95.1.1"/></p> <p>Secondary IP Address: <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address</p> <p>MAC Address:</p> <p><input type="text" value="00"/> <input type="text" value="50"/> <input type="text" value="7F"/> <input type="text" value="C2"/> <input type="text" value="7F"/> <input type="text" value="49"/></p>
---	--

### Static or Dynamic IP (DHCP Client)

Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

### ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **Internet Access Setup > Dialing to a Single ISP** to enter the backup profile.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

This setting is available for *i* model only.

### Keep WAN Connection

Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check **Enable PING to keep alive** box to activate this function.

**PING to the IP** - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive.

**PING Interval** - Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.

### RIP Protocol

Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click **Enable RIP** for activating this function.

### WAN Connection Detection

Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.

**Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection.

**Ping IP** – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.

**TTL (Time to Live)** – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.

### MTU

Mean maximum transmission unit of one packet. The default value is 1442.

### WAN IP Network Settings

This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only.

Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Join NAT IP Pool
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172.16.3.229	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear All Close

**Obtain an IP address automatically** – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use **Dynamic IP** mode.

**Router Name:** Type in the router name provided by ISP.

**Domain Name:** Type in the domain name that you have assigned.

**Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some data if you want to use **Static IP** mode.

**IP Address:** Type the IP address.

**Subnet Mask:** Type the subnet mask.

**Gateway IP Address:** Type the gateway IP address.

**Default MAC Address :** Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.

**Specify a MAC Address:** Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the **Specify a MAC Address** and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.

**DNS Server IP Address**

Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use **Static IP** mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

**Details Page for PPTP/L2TP**

To use **PPTP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **PPTP** mode for WAN2. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

<p><b>PPTP/L2TP Client Mode</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Enable PPTP <input type="radio"/> Enable L2TP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p>Server Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>Specify Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="172.16.3.1"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>ISP Access Setup</b></p> <p>Username <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text"/></p> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: =&gt; <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b></p> <p>Dial Backup Mode <input type="text" value="None"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>MTU</b> <input type="text" value="1442"/> (Max: 1460)</p>	<p><b>PPP Setup</b></p> <p>PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/></p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)</p> <p><b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> <input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/></p> <p>Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)</p> <p>Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>WAN IP Network Settings</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically <input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="172.16.3.102"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/></p>
---	--

OK Cancel

**PPTP/L2TP Client Mode**

**Enable PPTP / Enable L2TP** - Click **Enable PPTP / Enable L2TP** to enable a PPTP/L2TP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface.

**Server Address** – Type the IP address for PPTP or L2TP server.

**Specify Gateway IP Address** - Specify the gateway for the PPTP/L2TP server.

**ISP Access Setup**

**Username** -Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.

**Password** -Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup** - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Application – Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

### ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **Internet Access Setup > Dialing to a Single ISP** to enter the backup profile.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

This setting is available for *i* model only.

### MTU

Mean maximum transmission unit of one packet. The default value is 1442.

### PPP Setup

**PPP Authentication** - Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.

**Idle Timeout** - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. This setting is active only when the **Active on demand** option for Active Mode is selected in **WAN>> General Setup** page.

### IP Address Assignment Method(IPCP)

**Fixed IP** - Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box.

**Fixed IP Address** -Type a fixed IP address.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only.

Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Join NAT IP Pool
1.	v	172.16.3.229	v
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear All Close

**Default MAC Address** – Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.

**Specify a MAC Address** - Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the **Specify a MAC Address** and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.

**WAN IP Network Settings**

**Obtain an IP address automatically** – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.

**Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some data.

**IP Address** – Type the IP address.

**Subnet Mask** – Type the subnet mask.

### 3.1.4 Load-Balance Policy

This router supports the function of load balancing. It can assign traffic with protocol type, IP address for specific host, a subnet of hosts, and port range to be allocated in WAN1 or WAN2 interface. The user can assign traffic category and force it to go to dedicate network interface based on the following web page setup. Twenty policies of load-balance are supported by this router.

**Note:** Load-Balance Policy is running only when both WAN1 and WAN2 are activated.

WAN >> Load-Balance Policy

Load-Balance Policy

Index	Enable	Protocol	WAN	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port Start	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1								<a href="#">Down</a>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	any	WAN1							<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

OK

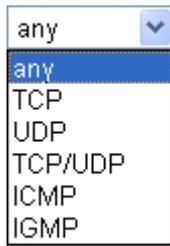
**Index**

Click the number of index to access into the load-balance policy configuration web page.

**Enable**

Check this box to enable this policy.

**Protocol** Use the drop-down menu to change the protocol for the WAN interface.



**WAN** Use the drop-down menu to change the WAN interface.

**Src IP Start** Display the IP address for the start of the source IP.

**Src IP End** Display the IP address for the end of the source IP.

**Dest IP Start** Display the IP address for the start of the destination IP.

**Dest IP End** Display the IP address for the end of the destination IP.

**Dest Port Start** Display the IP address for the start of the destination port.

**Dest Port End** Display the IP address for the end of the destination port.

**Move UP/Move Down** Use **Up** or **Down** link to move the order of the policy.

Click **Index 1** to access into the following page for configuring load-balance policy.

**WAN >> Load-Balance Policy**

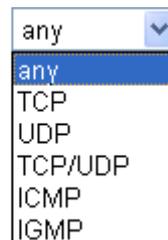
**Index: 1**

OK Cancel

**Enable** Check this box to enable this policy.

**Protocol** Use the drop-down menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN interface.

Protocol



**Binding WAN interface**

Choose the WAN interface (WAN1 or WAN2) for binding.

You can check the box of **Auto failover to other WAN** to make a backup WAN connection if the selected WAN interface fails to connect to Internet.

**Src IP Start**

Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.

**Src IP End**

Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.

**Dest IP Start**

Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.

**Dest IP End**

Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.

**Dest Port Start**

Type the destination port start for the destination IP.

**Dest Port End**

Type the destination port end for the destination IP. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination ports will be passed through the WAN interface.

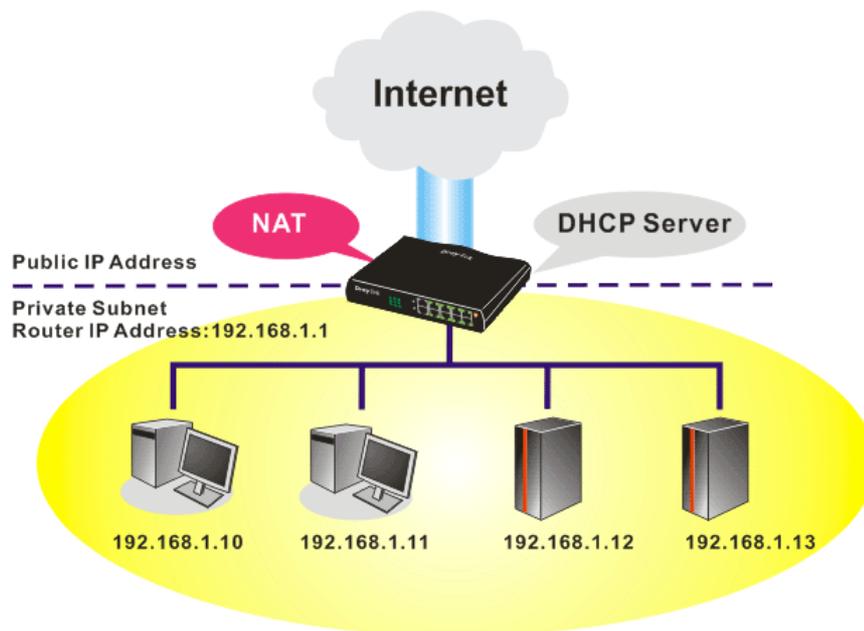
## 3.2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.

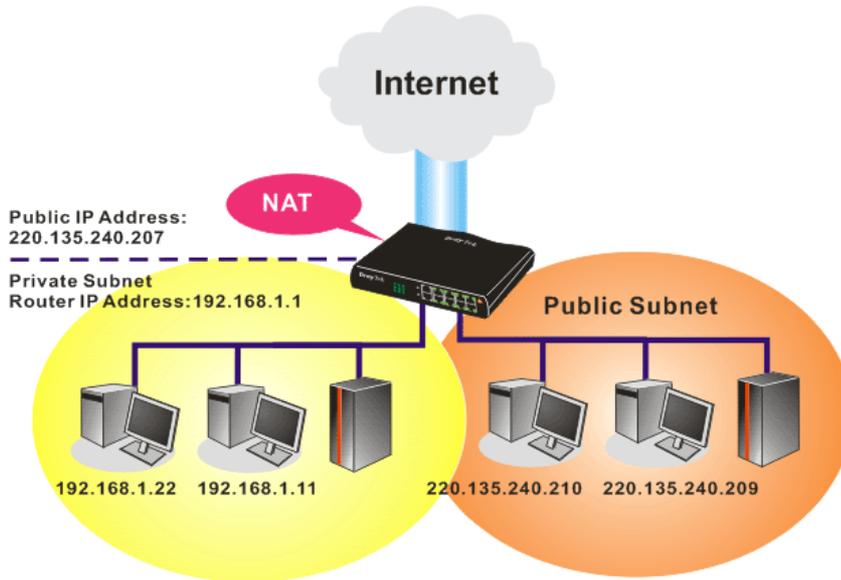


### 3.2.1 Basics of LAN

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.



### What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

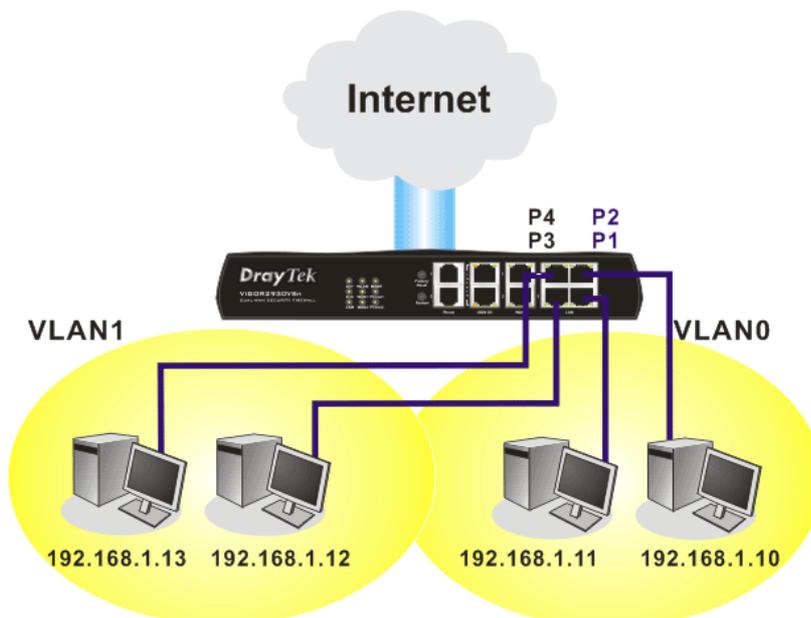
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

### What is Static Route

When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

### What are Virtual LANs and Rate Control

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 4 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



### 3.2.2 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN.

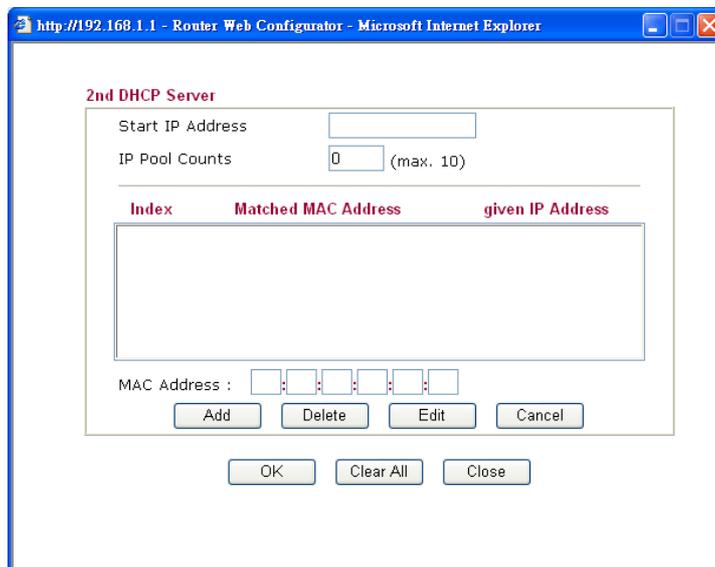
Click **LAN** to open the LAN settings page and choose **General Setup**.

[LAN >> General Setup](#)

**Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup**

<b>LAN IP Network Configuration</b>		<b>DHCP Server Configuration</b>	
For NAT Usage		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Disable Server	
1st IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>	Relay Agent:	<input type="radio"/> 1st Subnet <input type="radio"/> 2nd Subnet
1st Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	Start IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/>
For IP Routing Usage	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	IP Pool Counts	<input type="text" value="50"/>
2nd IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/>	Gateway IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>
2nd Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="2nd Subnet DHCP Server"/>		<b>DNS Server IP Address</b>	
RIP Protocol Control	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Force DNS manual setting	
		Primary IP Address	<input type="text"/>
		Secondary IP Address	<input type="text"/>

- 1st IP Address** Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).
- 1st Subnet Mask** Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)
- For IP Routing Usage** Click **Enable** to invoke this function. The default setting is **Disable**.
- 2<sup>nd</sup> IP Address** Type in secondary IP address for connecting to a subnet. (Default: 192.168.2.1/ 24)
- 2<sup>nd</sup> Subnet Mask** An address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)
- 2<sup>nd</sup> DHCP Server** You can configure the router to serve as a DHCP server for the 2nd subnet.



**Start IP Address:** Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 2nd IP address of your router is 220.135.240.1, the starting IP address must be 220.135.240.2 or greater, but smaller than 220.135.240.254.

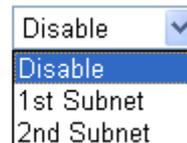
**IP Pool Counts:** Enter the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10. For example, if you type 3 and the 2nd IP address of your router is 220.135.240.1, the range of IP address by the DHCP server will be from 220.135.240.2 to 220.135.240.11.

**MAC Address:** Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click **Add** to create a list of hosts to be assigned, deleted or edited IP address from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2<sup>nd</sup> DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2<sup>nd</sup> subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1<sup>st</sup> subnet.

### RIP Protocol Control

**Disable** deactivates the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)

RIP Protocol Control



Disable	▼
Disable	
1st Subnet	
2nd Subnet	

**1st Subnet** - Select the router to change the RIP information of the 1st subnet with neighboring routers.

**2nd Subnet** - Select the router to change the RIP information of the 2nd subnet with neighboring routers.

### DHCP Server Configuration

DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.

If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.

**Enable Server** - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.

**Disable Server** – Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.

**Relay Agent** – (1<sup>st</sup> subnet/2<sup>nd</sup> subnet) Specify which subnet that DHCP server is located the relay agent should redirect the DHCP request to.

**Start IP Address** - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.

**IP Pool Counts** - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.

**Gateway IP Address** - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address

of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.  
**DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent** - Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.

## DNS Server Configuration

DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.

**Force DNS manual setting** - Force Vigor router to use DNS servers in this page instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server).

**Primary IP Address** - You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.

**Secondary IP Address** - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.

The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:

System Status		System Uptime: 71:47:46	
LAN Status	Primary DNS: 194.109.6.66	Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1	
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets	
192.168.1.1	347390	214004	

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.

If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

There are two common scenarios of LAN settings that stated in Chapter 4. For the configuration examples, please refer to that chapter to get more information for your necessity.

### 3.2.3 Static Route

Go to **LAN** to open setting page and choose **Static Route**.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

Static Route Configuration			<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		<a href="#">View Routing Table</a>	
Index	Destination Address	Status	Index	Destination Address	Status	
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">6.</a>	???	?	
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">7.</a>	???	?	
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">8.</a>	???	?	
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">9.</a>	???	?	
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	?	<a href="#">10.</a>	???	?	

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

- Index** The number (1 to 10) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.
- Destination Address** Displays the destination address of the static route.
- Status** Displays the status of the static route.
- Viewing Routing Table** Displays the routing table for your reference.

[Diagnostics >> View Routing Table](#)

```

Current Running Routing Table | Refresh |
Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
*      0.0.0.0/          0.0.0.0 via 172.16.3.1,   WAN1
C~    192.168.1.0/      255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN
C     172.16.3.0/      255.255.255.0 is directly connected, WAN1

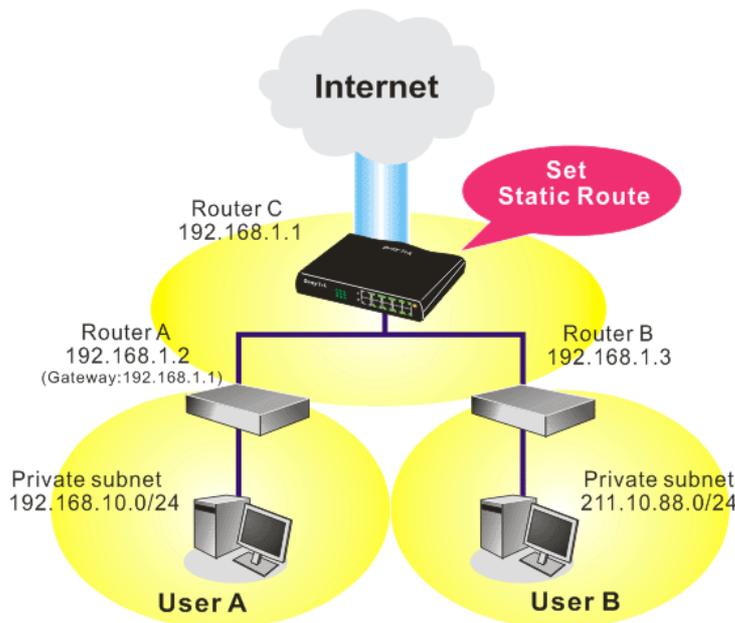
```

### Add Static Routes to Private and Public Networks

Here is an example of setting Static Route in Main Router so that user A and B locating in different subnet can talk to each other via the router. Assuming the Internet access has been configured and the router works properly:

- use the Main Router to surf the Internet.
- create a private subnet 192.168.10.0 using an internal Router A (192.168.1.2)
- create a public subnet 211.100.88.0 via an internal Router B (192.168.1.3).
- have set Main Router 192.168.1.1 as the default gateway for the Router A 192.168.1.2.

Before setting Static Route, user A cannot talk to user B for Router A can only forward recognized packets to its default gateway Main Router.



1. Go to **LAN** page and click **General Setup**, select 1st Subnet as the **RIP Protocol Control**. Then click the **OK** button.

**Note:** There are two reasons that we have to apply RIP Protocol Control on 1st Subnet. The first is that the LAN interface can exchange RIP packets with the neighboring routers via the 1st subnet (192.168.1.0/24). The second is that those hosts on the internal private subnets (ex. 192.168.10.0/24) can access the Internet via the router, and continuously exchange of IP routing information with different subnets.

2. Click the **LAN - Static Route** and click on the **Index Number 1**. Check the **Enable** box. Please add a static route as shown below, which regulates all packets destined to 192.168.10.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.2. Click **OK**.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

**Index No. 1**

Enable

Destination IP Address: 192.168.10.0

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Gateway IP Address: 192.168.1.2

Network Interface: LAN

OK Cancel

3. Return to **Static Route Setup** page. Click on another **Index Number** to add another static route as show below, which regulates all packets destined to 211.100.88.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.3.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

**Index No. 1**

Enable

Destination IP Address: 211.100.88.0

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Gateway IP Address: 192.168.1.3

Network Interface: LAN

OK Cancel

4. Go to **Diagnostics** and choose **Routing Table** to verify current routing table.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

Current Running Routing Table | Refresh |

Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, \* - default, ~ - private

S~	192.168.10.0/	255.255.255.0	via 192.168.1.2,	LAN
C~	192.168.1.0/	255.255.255.0	is directly connected,	LAN
S~	211.100.88.0/	255.255.255.0	via 192.168.1.3,	LAN

### 3.2.4 VLAN (Monitor)

Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. You can also manage the in/out rate of each port.

LAN Port mirror can be applied for the users in LAN. Generally speaking, this function copies traffic from one or more specific ports to a target port. This mechanism helps manager track the network errors or abnormal packets transmission without interrupting the flow of data access the network. By the way, user can apply this function to monitor all traffics which user needs to check.

There are some advantages supported in this feature. First, it is more economical without other detecting equipments to be set up. Second, it may be able to view traffic on one or more ports within a VLAN at the same time. Third, it can transfer all data traffics to be mirrored to one analyzer connect to the mirroring port. Last, it is more convenient and easy to configure in user's interface.

Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke LAN Port Mirror / VLAN function.

#### LAN >> VLAN Configuration

##### Lan Port Mirror (Monitor Port: P1)

Enable

**Note:** After enable monitor port

1. LAN-to-WAN throughput will drop a lot. Suggest not to use in > 45Mbps line.
2. Can't monitor LAN-to-LAN packet.
3. Monitor packet MAC address will be changed.

##### VLAN Configuration

Enable

	P1	P2	P3	P4
VLAN0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

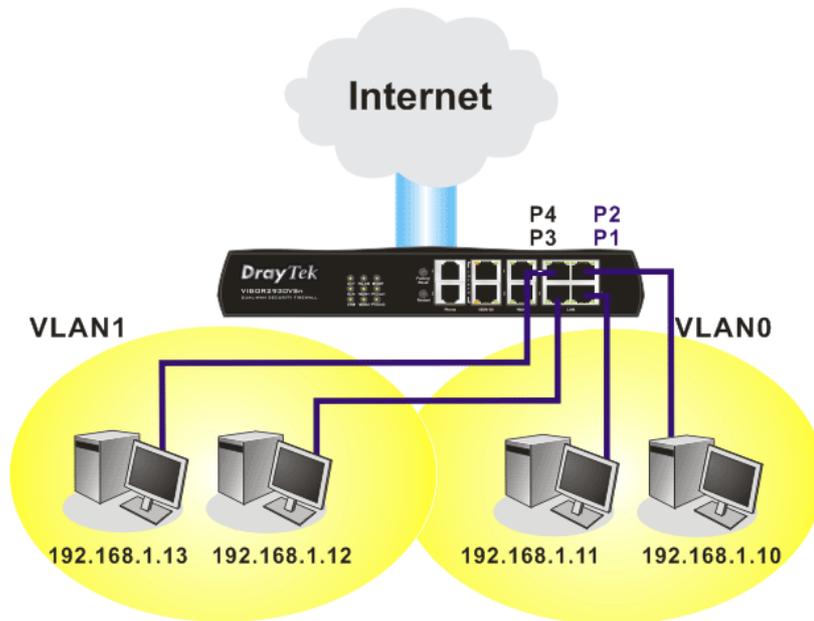
OK

Clear

Cancel

To add or remove a VLAN, please refer to the following example.

1. If, VLAN 0 is consisted of hosts linked to P1 and P2 and VLAN 1 is consisted of hosts linked to P3 and P4.



2. After checking the box to enable VLAN function, you will check the table according to the needs as shown below.

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

#### VLAN Configuration

	P1	P2	P3	P4
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable				
VLAN0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
VLAN1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
VLAN3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear Cancel

To remove VLAN, uncheck the needed box and click **OK** to save the results.

### 3.2.5 Bind IP to MAC

This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthen control in network. When this function is enabled, all the assigned IP and MAC address binding together cannot be changed. If you modified the binding IP or MAC address, it might cause you not access into the Internet.

Click **LAN** and click **Bind IP to MAC** to open the setup page.

## Bind IP to MAC

**Note:** IP-MAC binding presets DHCP Allocations.  
If you select Strict Bind, unspecified LAN clients cannot access the Internet.

**Enable**
 **Disable**
 **Strict Bind**

**ARP Table** | [Select All](#) | [Sort](#) | [Refresh](#) | 
 **IP Bind List** | [Select All](#) | [Sort](#)

IP Address	Mac Address
192.168.1.10	00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1
192.168.1.219	00-50-7F-33-F8-0B
192.168.1.92	00-13-D4-1B-B3-3D
192.168.1.218	00-0B-CD-55-CB-45
192.168.1.11	00-0D-0B-A7-86-F3
192.168.1.100	00-08-A1-36-97-5D
192.168.1.222	00-18-F3-C0-42-2C
192.168.1.10	00-E0-18-87-51-72
192.168.1.13	00-E0-18-F9-53-D5
192.168.1.4	00-85-A0-01-01-00

Index	IP Address	Mac Address
-------	------------	-------------

**Add and Edit**

IP Address

Mac Address  :  :  :  :

- Enable** Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet.
- Disable** Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid.
- Strict Bind** Click this radio button to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List.
- ARP Table** This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking **Add** below.
- Add and Edit** **IP Address** – Type the IP address that will be used for the specified MAC address.  
**Mac Address** – Type the MAC address that is used to bind with the assigned IP address.
- Refresh** It is used to refresh the ARP table. When there is one new PC added to the LAN, you can click this link to obtain the newly ARP table information.
- IP Bind List** It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information.
- Add** It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in **Add and Edit** to the table of **IP Bind List**.
- Edit** It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before.
- Delete** You can remove any item listed in **IP Bind List**. Simply click and select the one, and click **Delete**. The selected item will be removed from the **IP Bind List**.

**Note:** Before you select **Strict Bind**, you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one PC. If not, no one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web configurator of the router might not be accessed.

### 3.2.6 Web Authentication

The purpose of web authentication is to offer a convenient accessing management. When such function is enabled, all the users in LAN side without passing the web authentication cannot access into network through the router.

LAN >> Web Authentication

**Web Authentication**

**Web Authentication**  Enable  Disable

Bypass IP in IP-MAC binding list

**Account Setting:**  Allow user login with the same account

Common account ID:  P/W:

Share vpn remote dial in profile [Account Setting](#)

**Timeout Setting:**  Enable  Disable

Logout at  :  everyday

Logout every  minutes (1~65535)

Logout when idle time out  minutes (1~1440)

**Welcome Message:**

Go to check the [Connection Status](#)

OK Cancel

**Web Authentication** Click **Enable** to activate such feature. The default setting is **Disable**.

**Bypass IP in IP-MAC binding list** – All the clients with the IP listed in **Bind IP to MAC** can access into Internet without passing the web authentication. If you check this box, the function of web authentication will be disabled.

**Account Setting** **Allow user login with the same account** – check this box to let the user(s) login router’s web page with the same account.

**Common account** – please specify a name with a password as the identification for accessing into router’s web page for the users in LAN side. The default settings for ID/password are “draytek/draytek”. All the users should use such account to pass the web authentication.

**Share vpn remote dial in profile** – you can share the account set in remote VPN dial-in profiles. Click this button and press **Account Setting** link to choose one of the accounts (total 32 profiles) for applying to the web authentication.

**Timeout Setting** Users might have to re-login after passing the timeout setting specified here. When you **enable** the timeout setting, please specify the conditions for logout.

	Click <b>Disable</b> to disable the timeout feature.
<b>Welcome Message</b>	Such message will be displayed on the redirect page when you access into the URL that you want.
<b>Connection Status</b>	Display IP, username, login time, etc., of the users logging currently.

## How to use Web Authentication

Before passing the web authentication from the router, any user will be directed into the following screen whenever he tries to access into Internet via http or https.

### Welcome to Vigor V2910 Web Authentication

Log in WEB [HERE](#)

If your browser does not support SSL, click [here](#)

Click the [HERE](#) link to access into the authentication page.

**DrayTek WEB Authentication**

---

Login ID	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>

Type the ID and password configured in **Common Account**. The default setting is “draytek” for both ID and password. After entering the ID and Password, click **OK**. If you pass the authentication, you will see the following page.

### DrayTek WEB Authentication

User login succeeds !!!

Now, please surf the Internet.

## 3.3 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

- **Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address.** NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- **Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address.** There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.

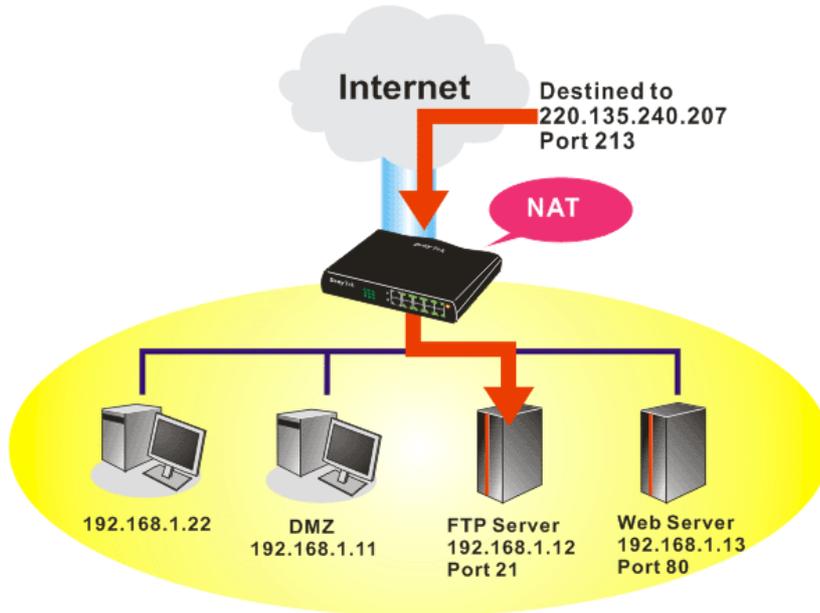
On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

Below shows the menu items for NAT.



### 3.3.1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.



The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

To use this function, please go to **NAT** page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 20 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.

**NAT >> Port Redirection**

| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Service Name	Public Port	Private IP	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>				x
<a href="#">2.</a>				x
<a href="#">3.</a>				x
<a href="#">4.</a>				x
<a href="#">5.</a>				x
<a href="#">6.</a>				x
<a href="#">7.</a>				x
<a href="#">8.</a>				x
<a href="#">9.</a>				x
<a href="#">10.</a>				x

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.

Index No. 1

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Mode	Range
Service Name	Single
Protocol	---
WAN IP	1.All
Public Port	0 -
Private IP	-
Private Port	0

**Note:** In "Range" Mode the End IP will be calculated automatically once the Public Port and Start IP have been entered.

OK Clear Cancel

- Enable** Check this box to enable such port redirection setting.
- Mode** Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select **Range**. In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically.
- Service Name** Enter the description of the specific network service.
- Protocol** Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
- WAN IP** Select the WAN IP used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is **All** which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port.
- Public Port** Specify which port can be redirected to the specified **Private IP and Port** of the internal host. If you choose **Range** as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Simply type the required number on the first box. The second one will be assigned automatically later.
- Private IP** Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose **Range** as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point) and the fourth digits in the second box (as the end point).
- Private Port** Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.

Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

For example, the built-in web configurator in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, http://192.168.1.13:80. Therefore, you need to **change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80** to avoid conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the **System Maintenance >>Management Setup**.

You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., <http://192.168.1.1:8080> instead of port 80.

System Maintenance >> Management

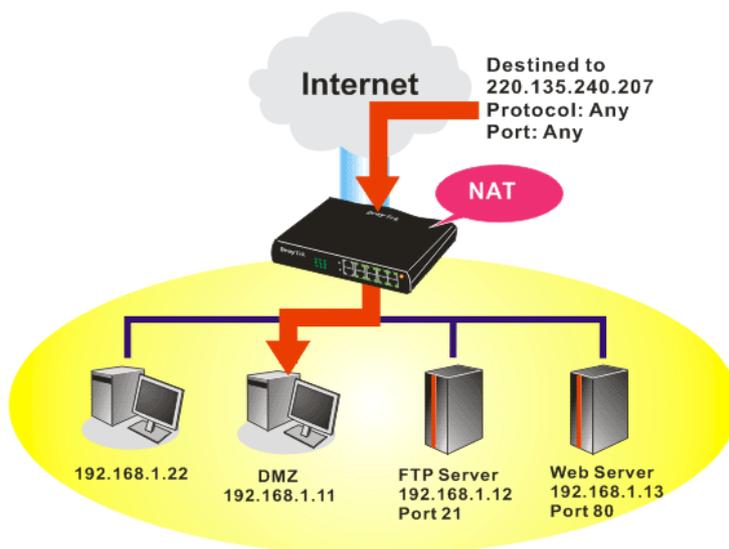
**Management Setup**

<p><b>Management Access Control</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet</p>	<p><b>Management Port Setup</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports</p> <p>Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23)</p> <p>HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80)</p> <p>HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443)</p> <p>FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21)</p> <p>SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22)</p>												
<p><b>Access List</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>IP</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	List	IP	Subnet Mask	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<p><b>SNMP Setup</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMP Agent</p> <p>Get Community <input type="text" value="public"/></p> <p>Set Community <input type="text" value="private"/></p> <p>Manager Host IP <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p>Trap Community <input type="text" value="public"/></p> <p>Notification Host IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>Trap Timeout <input type="text" value="10"/> seconds</p>
List	IP	Subnet Mask											
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>											
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>											
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>											

OK

### 3.3.2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.



The inherent security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page:

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

**DMZ Host Setup**

**WAN 1**

None

**Private IP**

**MAC Address of the True IP DMZ Host**

**Note:** When a True-IP DMZ host is turned on, it will force the router's WAN connection to be always on.

---

**WAN 2**

**Enable**

**Private IP**

If you previously have set up **WAN Alias** in **Internet Access>>PPPoE/PPPoA** or **Internet Access>>MPoA**, you will find them in **Aux. WAN IP list** for your selection.

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

**DMZ Host Setup**

**WAN 1**

Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Private IP	
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	172.16.3.229	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	172.16.3.89	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>

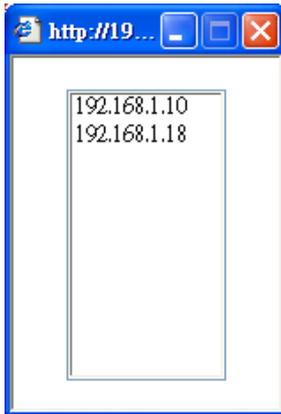
---

**WAN 2**

**Enable**

**Private IP**

- Enable** Check to enable the DMZ Host function.
- Private IP** Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.
- Choose PC** Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.



When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the following screen. Click **OK** to save the setting.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

DMZ Host Setup

WAN 1				
Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Private IP	
1.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	172.16.3.229	192.168.1.10	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	172.16.3.89		<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>

WAN 2		
Enable	Private IP	
<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>

### 3.3.3 Open Ports

**Open Ports** allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications. Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:

[NAT >> Open Ports](#)

Open Ports Setup				<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Comment	WAN Interface	Local IP Address	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>				X
<a href="#">2.</a>				X
<a href="#">3.</a>				X
<a href="#">4.</a>				X
<a href="#">5.</a>				X
<a href="#">6.</a>				X
<a href="#">7.</a>				X
<a href="#">8.</a>				X
<a href="#">9.</a>				X
<a href="#">10.</a>				X

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >> [Next](#) >>

<b>Index</b>	Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding entry.
<b>Comment</b>	Specify the name for the defined network service.
<b>WAN Interface</b>	Display the WAN interface for the entry.
<b>Local IP Address</b>	Display the private IP address of the local host offering the service.
<b>Status</b>	Display the state for the corresponding entry. X or V is to represent the <b>Inactive</b> or <b>Active</b> state.

To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify **10** port ranges for diverse services.

Index No. 1

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Open Ports							
Comment		<input type="text" value="P2P"/>					
WAN Interface		<input type="text" value="WAN1"/>					
Local Computer		<input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/>	<input type="button" value="Choose PC"/>				
	Protocol	Start Port	End Port		Protocol	Start Port	End Port
1.	<input type="text" value="TCP"/>	<input type="text" value="4500"/>	<input type="text" value="4700"/>	6.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
2.	<input type="text" value="UDP"/>	<input type="text" value="4500"/>	<input type="text" value="4700"/>	7.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
3.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	8.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
4.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	9.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
5.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	10.	<input type="text" value="-----"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>

- Enable Open Ports**      Check to enable this entry.
- Comment**                      Make a name for the defined network application/service.
- WAN Interface**                Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry.
- Local Computer**                Enter the private IP address of the local host or click **Choose PC** to select one.
- Choose PC**                      Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list.
- Protocol**                        Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be **TCP**, **UDP**, or **-----** (none) for selection.
- Start Port**                      Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host.
- End Port**                        Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host.

### 3.3.4 Address Mapping

This page is used to map specific private IP to specific WAN IP alias.

If you have "a group of IP Addresses" and want to apply to the router, please use WAN IP alias function to record these IPs first. Then, use address mapping function to map specific private IP to specific WAN IP alias.

For example, you have IP addresses ranging from 86.123.123.1 ~ 86.123.123.8. However, your router uses 86.123.123.1, and the rest of the IPs are recorded in WAN IP alias. You want that private IP 192.168.1.10 can use 86.123.123.2 as source IP when it sends packet out to Internet. You can use address mapping function to achieve this demand. Simply type 192.168.1.10 as the Private IP; and type 86.123.123.2 as the WAN IP.

**NAT >> Address Mapping**

Address Mapping Setup					<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>
Index	Protocol	Public IP	Private IP	Mask	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">2.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">3.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">4.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">5.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">6.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">7.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">8.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">9.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x
<a href="#">10.</a>	ALL	172.16.3.102		/32	x

- Protocol**                      Display the protocol used for this address mapping.
- Public IP**                    Display the public IP address selected for this entry, e.g., 172.16.3.102.
- Private IP**                    Display the private IP set for this address mapping, e.g., 192.168.1.10
- Mask**                         Display the subnet mask selected for this address mapping.
- Status**                        Display the status for the entry, enable or disable.

Click the index number link to open the configuration page.

**NAT >> Address Mapping**

**Index No. 1**

Enable

Protocol: ALL ▾

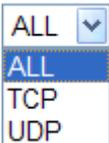
WAN Interface: WAN1 ▾

WAN IP: 1-172.16.3.102 ▾

Private IP:

Subnet Mask: /32 ▾

- Enable**                        Check to enable this entry.
- Protocol**                    Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be **TCP**, **UDP**, or **ALL** for selection.
 


- WAN Interface**            Choose the WAN interface for such address mapping profile.
- WAN IP**                    Select an IP address (the selections provided here are set in **IP Alias List** of **Network >>WAN** interface). Local host can use this IP to connect to Internet.  
If you want to choose any one of the Public IP settings, you must

specify some IP addresses in the IP Alias List of the Static/DHCP Configuration page first. If you did not type in any IP address in the IP Alias List, the Public IP setting will be empty in this field. When you click **Apply**, a message will appear to inform you.

**Private IP**

Assign an IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.10) or a subnet to be compared with the Public IP address for incoming packets.

**Subnet Mask**

Select a value of subnet mask for private IP address.

## 3.4 Firewall

### 3.4.1 Basics for Firewall

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet. Furthermore, it can filter out specific packets that trigger the router to build an unwanted outgoing connection.

#### Firewall Facilities

The users on the LAN are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

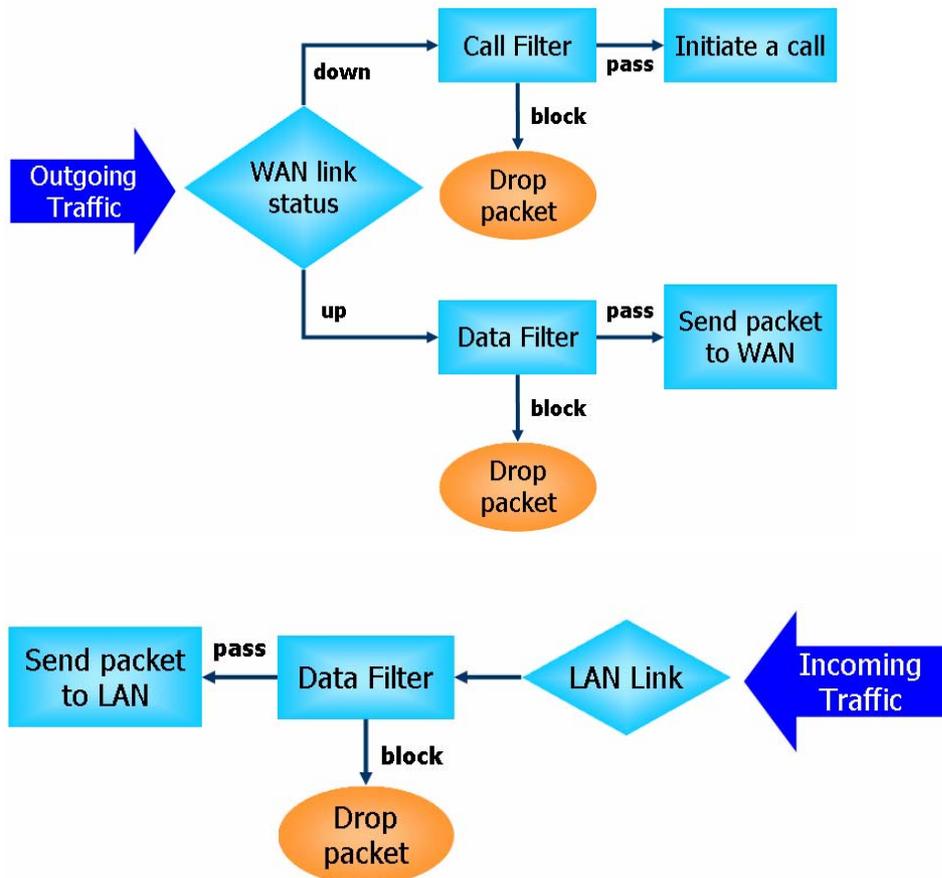
- User-configurable IP filter (Call Filter/ Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

#### IP Filters

Depending on whether there is an existing Internet connection, or in other words “the WAN link status is up or down”, the IP filter architecture categorizes traffic into two: **Call Filter** and **Data Filter**.

- **Call Filter** - When there is no existing Internet connection, **Call Filter** is applied to all traffic, all of which should be outgoing. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass. Then the router shall “**initiate a call**” to build the Internet connection and send the packet to Internet.
- **Data Filter** - When there is an existing Internet connection, **Data Filter** is applied to incoming and outgoing traffic. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass the router.

The following illustrations are flow charts explaining how router will treat incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.



### Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not just examine the header information also monitor the state of the connection.

### Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

The **DoS Defense** functionality helps you to detect and mitigate the DoS attack. The attacks are usually categorized into two types, the flooding-type attacks and the vulnerability attacks. The flooding-type attacks will attempt to exhaust all your system's resource while the vulnerability attacks will try to paralyze the system by offending the vulnerabilities of the protocol or operation system.

The **DoS Defense** function enables the Vigor router to inspect every incoming packet based on the attack signature database. Any malicious packet that might duplicate itself to paralyze the host in the secure LAN will be strictly blocked and a Syslog message will be sent as warning, if you set up Syslog server.

Also the Vigor router monitors the traffic. Any abnormal traffic flow violating the pre-defined parameter, such as the number of thresholds, is identified as an attack and the Vigor router will activate its defense mechanism to mitigate in a real-time manner.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

1. SYN flood attack
9. Smurf attack

- 2. UDP flood attack
- 3. ICMP flood attack
- 4. TCP Flag scan
- 5. Trace route
- 6. IP options
- 7. Unknown protocol
- 8. Land attack
- 10. SYN fragment
- 11. ICMP fragment
- 12. Tear drop attack
- 13. Fraggle attack
- 14. Ping of Death attack
- 15. TCP/UDP port scan

Below shows the menu items for Firewall.



### 3.4.2 General Setup

General Setup allows you to adjust settings of IP Filter and common options. Here you can enable or disable the **Call Filter** or **Data Filter**. Under some circumstance, your filter set can be linked to work in a serial manner. So here you assign the **Start Filter Set** only. Also you can configure the **Log Flag** settings, **Apply IP filter to VPN incoming packets**, and **Accept incoming fragmented UDP packets**.

Click **Firewall** and click **General Setup** to open the general setup page.

Firewall >> General Setup

**General Setup**

**Call Filter**  Enable  Disable Start Filter Set

**Data Filter**  Enable  Disable Start Filter Set

---

**Actions for default rule:**

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
<b>Filter</b>	<input type="text" value="Pass"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>APP Enforcement</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>URL Content Filter</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Web Content Filter</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

---

Advance Setting

---

Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets ( for some games, ex. CS )

Enable Transparent mode

**Call Filter** Check **Enable** to activate the Call Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Call Filter.

**Data Filter** Check **Enable** to activate the Data Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Data Filter.

**Action/Profile** Select **Pass** or **Block** for the packets that do not match with the

filter rules.

#### APP Enforcement

Select one of the **APP Enforcement** settings (created in **CSM>> APP Enforcement Profile Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> APP Enforcement Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **APP Enforcement Profile** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

#### URL Content Filter

Select one of the **URL Content Filter Profile** settings (created in **CSM>> URL Content Filter Profile**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> URL Content Filter Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **URL Content Filter** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

#### Web Content Filter

Select one of the **Web Content Filter Profile** settings (created in **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **Web Content Filter Profile** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

#### Syslog

For troubleshooting needs you can specify the filter log and/or CSM log here by checking the box. The log will be displayed on Draytek Syslog window.

#### Advance Setting

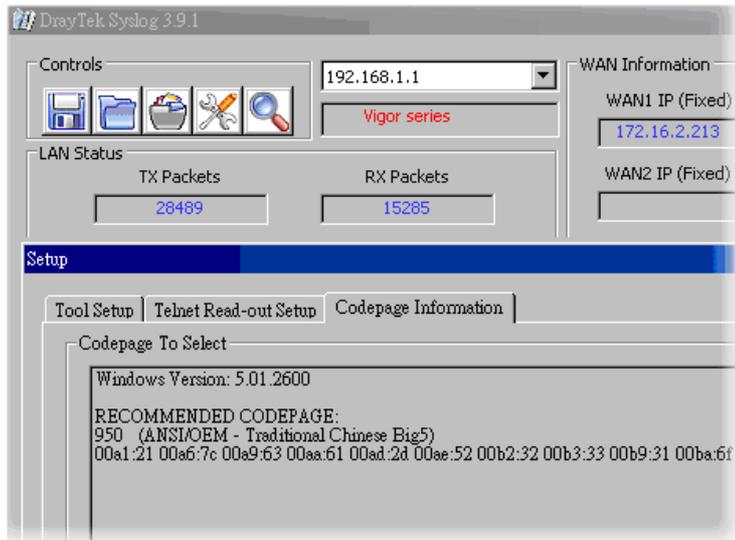
Click **Edit** to open the following window. However, it is **strongly recommended** to use the default settings here.

Firewall >> General Setup

Advance Setting	
Codepage	ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size:	65535
Session timeout:	1440 Minute

OK Close

**Codepage** - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage. If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



**Window size** – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

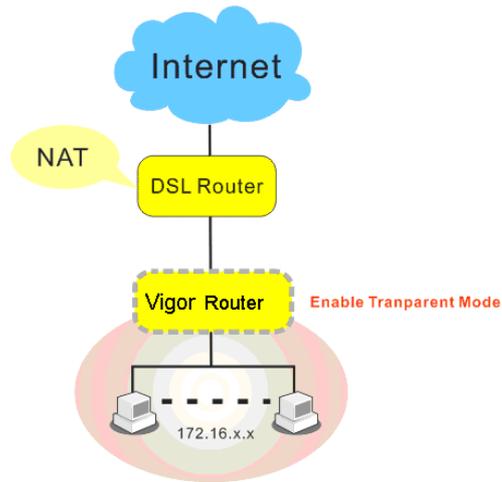
**Session timeout**–Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

**Accept large incoming...**

Some on-line games (for example: Half Life) will use lots of fragmented UDP packets to transfer game data. Instinctively as a secure firewall, Vigor router will reject these fragmented packets to prevent attack unless you enable “**Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP Packets**”. By checking this box, you can play these kinds of on-line games. If security concern is in higher priority, you cannot enable “**Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP Packets**”.

**Enable Transparent Mode**

Check this box to enable transparent function for such router. It is not necessary for users to re-organize the network or configure the subnet settings for each PC connected under such router. However, the configured Anti-Virus and Anti-Intrusion profiles can be applied to PCs connected behind vigor router to have the best security. The following picture explains the basic structure for using transparent mode for vigor router.



PCs with subnet “172.16.x.x” connected under Vigor router will be protected by security settings enabled and configured on the web pages of Vigor router. When the transparent mode has been checked, hackers from Internet do not sense the existence of vigor router, therefore they cannot attack the router.

### 3.4.3 Filter Setup

Click **Firewall** and click **Filter Setup** to open the setup page.

Firewall >> Filter Setup

Filter Setup		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Set	Comments	Set	Comments
<a href="#">1.</a>	Default Call Filter	<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>	Default Data Filter	<a href="#">8.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">9.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">10.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">11.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">12.</a>	

To edit or add a filter, click on the set number to edit the individual set. The following page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules. Click on the rule number button to edit each rule. Check **Active** to enable the rule.

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set

Filter Set 1

Comments :

Filter Rule	Active	Comments	Move Up	Move Down
<input type="button" value="1"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block NetBios		<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="2"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="3"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="4"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="5"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="6"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	<a href="#">Down</a>
<input type="button" value="7"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">UP</a>	

Next Filter Set

- Filter Rule** Click a button numbered (1 ~ 7) to edit the filter rule. Click the button will open Edit Filter Rule web page. For the detailed information, refer to the following page.
- Active** Enable or disable the filter rule.
- Comment** Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 23-character long.
- Move Up/Down** Use **Up** or **Down** link to move the order of the filter rules.
- Next Filter Set** Set the link to the next filter set to be executed after the current filter run. Do not make a loop with many filter sets.

To edit **Filter Rule**, click the **Filter Rule** index button to enter the **Filter Rule** setup page.

[Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule](#)

**Filter Set 1 Rule 1**

Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup:  ,  ,  ,

---

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

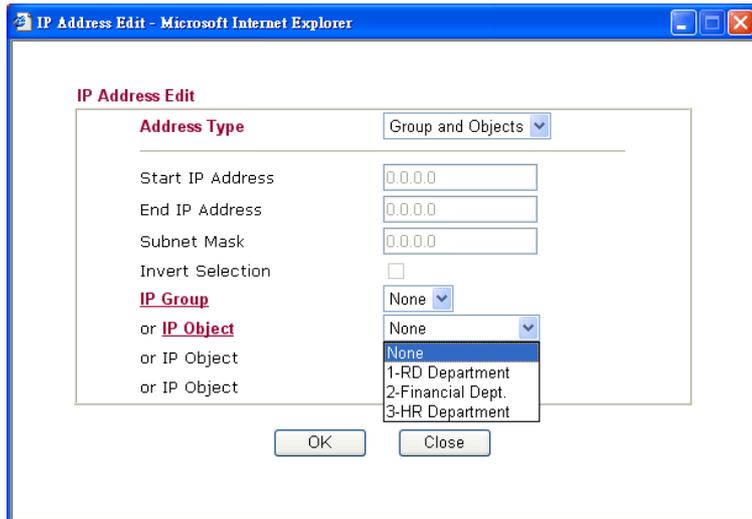
---

Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter:	<input type="text" value="Block Immediately"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Branch to Other Filter Set:	<input type="text" value="None"/>	
<b>APP Enforcement:</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>URL Content Filter</b>	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

---

Advance Setting

- Check to enable the Filter Rule** Check this box to enable the filter rule.
- Comments** Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14-character long.
- Index(1-15)** Set PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this filed is blank and the function will always work.
- Direction** Set the direction of packet flow (LAN->WAN/WAN->LAN). It is for **Data Filter** only. For the **Call Filter**, this setting is not available since **Call Filter** is only applied to outgoing traffic.
- Source/Destination IP** Click **Edit** to access into the following dialog to choose the source/destination IP or IP ranges.



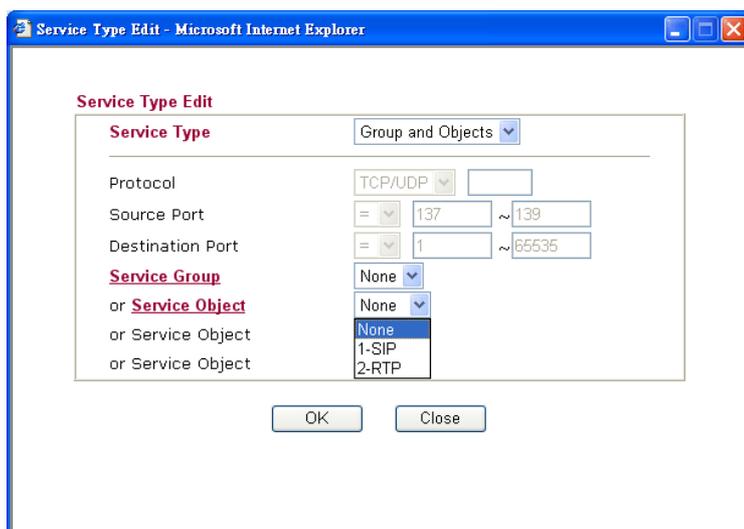
To set the IP address manually, please choose **Any Address/Single Address/Range Address/Subnet Address** as the Address Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the IP range from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Address Type.



From the **IP Group** drop down list, choose the one that you want to apply. Or use the **IP Object** drop down list to choose the object that you want.

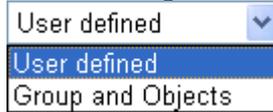
### Service Type

Click **Edit** to access into the following dialog to choose a suitable service type.



To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the service type from defined groups or objects, please

choose **Group and Objects** as the Service Type.



**Protocol** - Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.

**Source/Destination Port** -

(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.

(!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.

(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.

(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

**Service Group/Object** - Use the drop down list to choose the one that you want.

#### **Fragments**

Specify the action for fragmented packets. And it is used for **Data Filter** only.

**Don't care** -No action will be taken towards fragmented packets.

**Unfragmented** -Apply the rule to unfragmented packets.

**Fragmented** - Apply the rule to fragmented packets.

**Too Short** - Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header.

#### **Filter**

Specifies the action to be taken when packets match the rule.

**Block Immediately** - Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately.

**Pass Immediately** - Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately.

**Block If No Further Match** - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be dropped.

**Pass If No Further Match** - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be passed through.

#### **Branch to other Filter Set**

If the packet matches the filter rule, the next filter rule will branch to the specified filter set. Select next filter rule to branch from the drop-down menu. Be aware that the router will apply the specified filter rule for ever and will not return to previous filter rule any more.

#### **APP Enforcement**

All the packets/connections within the range configured in the above conditions must follow the standard configured in the **APP Enforcement** profile selected here. For detailed information, refer to the section of **APP Enforcement** profile setup.

#### **URL Content Filter**

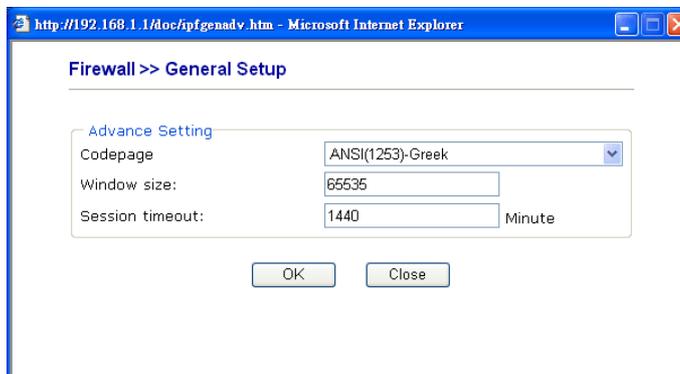
Select one of the **URL Content Filter** profile settings (created in **CSM>> URL Content Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> URL Content Filter** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **URL Content Filter** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

## SysLog

For troubleshooting needs you can specify the filter log and/or CSM log here. Check the corresponding box to enable the log function. Then, the filter log and/or CSM log will be shown on Draytek Syslog window.

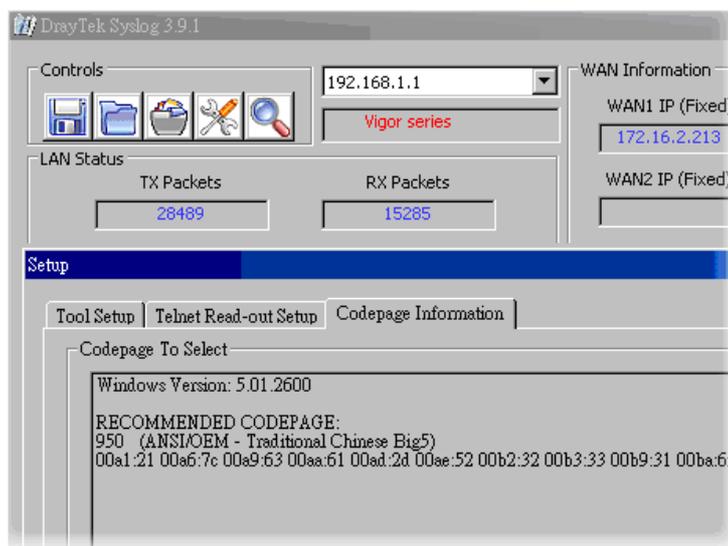
## Advance Setting

Click **Edit** to open the following window. However, it is **strongly recommended** to use the default settings here.



**Codepage** - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



**Window size** – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

**Session timeout**–Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

## Example

As stated before, all the traffic will be separated and arbitrated using one of two IP filters: call filter or data filter. You may preset 12 call filters and data filters in **Filter Setup** and even link them in a serial manner. Each filter set is composed by 7 filter rules, which can be further defined. After that, in **General Setup** you may specify one set for call filter and one set for data filter to execute first.

The image shows three screenshots of the Firewall configuration interface, connected by red arrows indicating the sequence of steps:

- Firewall >> General Setup:** Shows the 'General Setup' section. The 'Call Filter' and 'Data Filter' are both enabled. The 'Start Filter Set' dropdown for both is set to 'Set#1' and 'Set#2' respectively. The 'Actions for default rule' section shows 'Filter' set to 'Pass', 'APP Enforcement' set to 'None', 'URL Content Filter' set to 'None', and 'Web Content Filter' set to 'None'. The 'Advance Setting' section has 'Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets' checked and 'Enable Transparent mode' unchecked.
- Firewall >> Filter Setup:** Shows a table of filter sets. The first two rows are highlighted with red boxes:

Set	Comments	Set	Comments
1.	Default Call Filter	7.	
2.	Default Data Filter	8.	
3.		9.	
4.		10.	
5.		11.	
6.		12.	
- Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set:** Shows a table of filter rules for 'Filter Set 1'. The first row is highlighted with a red box:

Filter Rule	Active	Comments	Move Up	Move Down
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Block NetBios	UP	DOWN
2	<input type="checkbox"/>		UP	DOWN
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		UP	DOWN
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		UP	DOWN
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		UP	DOWN
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		UP	DOWN
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		UP	DOWN
- Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule:** Shows the configuration for 'Filter Set 1 Rule 1'. The 'Check to enable the Filter Rule' checkbox is checked. The 'Comments' field is 'Block NetBios'. The 'Direction' is 'LAN -> WAN'. The 'Source IP' is 'Any', 'Destination IP' is 'Any', and 'Service Type' is 'TCP/UDP, Port. from 137-139 to undefined'. The 'Fragments' dropdown is set to 'Don't Care'. The 'Application' section shows 'Filter' set to 'Block Immediately', 'APP Enforcement' set to 'None', and 'URL Content Filter' set to 'None'.

### 3.4.4 DoS Defense

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the **DoS Defense** setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

Click **Firewall** and click **DoS Defense** to open the setup page.

**Firewall >> DoS defense Setup**

**DoS defense Setup**

Enable DoS Defense Select All

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SYN flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="50"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="150"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable ICMP flood defense	Threshold	<input type="text" value="50"/>	packets / sec
	Timeout	<input type="text" value="10"/>	sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Port Scan detection	Threshold	<input type="text" value="150"/>	packets / sec
<input type="checkbox"/> Block IP options	<input type="checkbox"/> Block TCP flag scan		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Land	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Tear Drop		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Smurf	<input type="checkbox"/> Block Ping of Death		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block trace route	<input type="checkbox"/> Block ICMP fragment		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block SYN fragment	<input type="checkbox"/> Block UnknownProtocol		
<input type="checkbox"/> Block Fraggle Attack			

OK Clear All Cancel

#### Enable Dos Defense

Check the box to activate the DoS Defense Functionality.

#### Enable SYN flood defense

Check the box to activate the SYN flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the TCP SYN packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent TCP SYN packets for a period defined in Timeout. The goal for this is prevent the TCP SYN packets' attempt to exhaust the limited-resource of Vigor router. By default, the threshold and timeout values are set to 50 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.

#### Enable UDP flood defense

Check the box to activate the UDP flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the UDP packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent UDP packets for a period defined in Timeout. The default setting for threshold and timeout are 150 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.

#### Enable ICMP flood defense

Check the box to activate the ICMP flood defense function. Similar to the UDP flood defense function, once if the Threshold of ICMP packets from Internet has exceeded the defined value, the router will discard the ICMP echo requests coming from the Internet. The default setting for threshold and timeout are 50 packets per second

and 10 seconds, respectively.

**Enable PortScan detection**

Port Scan attacks the Vigor router by sending lots of packets to many ports in an attempt to find ignorant services would respond. Check the box to activate the Port Scan detection. Whenever detecting this malicious exploration behavior by monitoring the port-scanning Threshold rate, the Vigor router will send out a warning. By default, the Vigor router sets the threshold as 150 packets per second.

**Block IP options**

Check the box to activate the Block IP options function. The Vigor router will ignore any IP packets with IP option field in the datagram header. The reason for limitation is IP option appears to be a vulnerability of the security for the LAN because it will carry significant information, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messages...etc. An eavesdropper outside might learn the details of your private networks.

**Block Land**

Check the box to enforce the Vigor router to defense the Land attacks. The Land attack combines the SYN attack technology with IP spoofing. A Land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with the identical source and destination addresses, as well as the port number to victims.

**Block Smurf**

Check the box to activate the Block Smurf function. The Vigor router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.

**Block trace router**

Check the box to enforce the Vigor router not to forward any trace route packets.

**Block SYN fragment**

Check the box to activate the Block SYN fragment function. The Vigor router will drop any packets having SYN flag and more fragment bit set.

**Block Fraggle Attack**

Check the box to activate the Block fraggle Attack function. Any broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet is blocked. Activating the DoS/DDoS defense functionality might block some legal packets. For example, when you activate the fraggle attack defense, all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked. Therefore, the RIP packets from the Internet might be dropped.

**Block TCP flag scan**

Check the box to activate the Block TCP flag scan function. Any TCP packet with anomaly flag setting is dropped. Those scanning activities include *no flag scan*, *FIN without ACK scan*, *SYN FINscan*, *Xmas scan* and *full Xmas scan*.

**Block Tear Drop**

Check the box to activate the Block Tear Drop function. Many machines may crash when receiving ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. To avoid this type of attack, the Vigor router is designed to be capable of discarding any fragmented ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 octets.

**Block Ping of Death**

Check the box to activate the Block Ping of Death function. This attack involves the perpetrator sending overlapping packets to the target hosts so that those target hosts will hang once they re-construct the packets. The Vigor routers will block any packets realizing this attacking activity.

**Block ICMP Fragment** Check the box to activate the Block ICMP fragment function. Any ICMP packets with more fragment bit set are dropped.

**Block Unknown Protocol** Check the box to activate the Block Unknown Protocol function. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets.

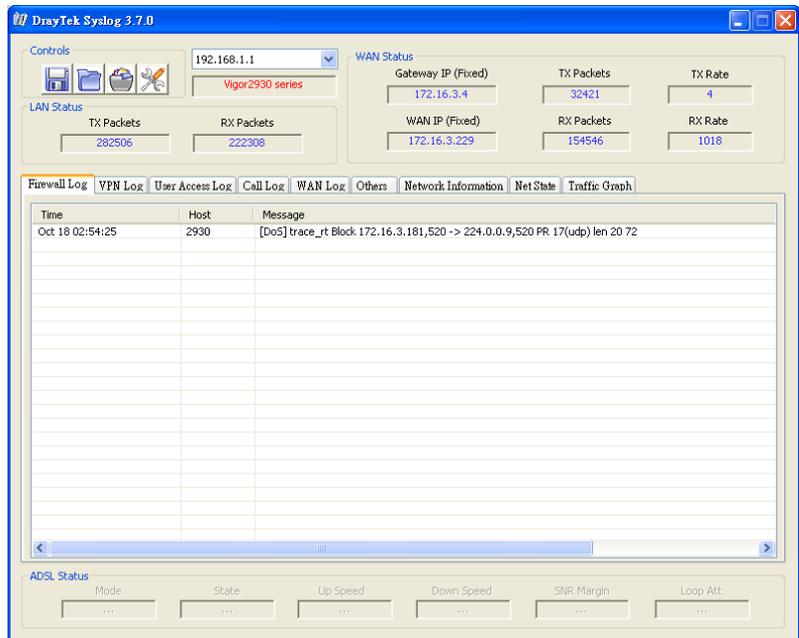
**Warning Messages** We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client.

All the warning messages related to **DoS Defense** will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword **DoS** in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected.

**SysLog / Mail Alert Setup**

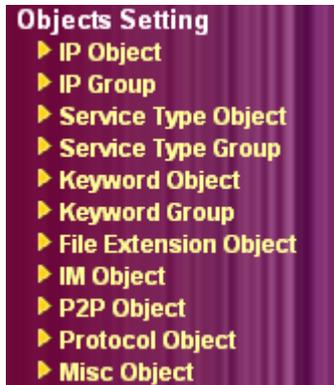
SysLog Access Setup	Mail Alert Setup
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
Server IP Address: 192.168.1.115	SMTP Server: <input type="text"/>
Destination Port: 514	Mail To: <input type="text"/>
Enable syslog message:	Return-Path: <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log	<input type="checkbox"/> Authentication
<input type="checkbox"/> VPN Log	User Name: <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> User Access Log	Password: <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> Call Log	
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN Log	
<input type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information	

OK Clear Cancel



## 3.5 Objects Settings

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with *objects* and bind them with *groups* for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group that can apply it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).



Besides, you can define object profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer)/Misc application.

### 3.5.1 IP Object

You can set up to 192 sets of IP Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

IP Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

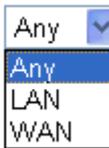
**Profile Index : 1**

Name:	RD Department
Interface:	Any
Address Type:	Range Address
Start IP Address:	192.168.1.64
End IP Address:	192.168.1.75
Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0
Invert Selection:	<input type="checkbox"/>

OK Clear Cancel

**Name** Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.

**Interface** Choose a proper interface (WAN, LAN or Any).

Interface: 

For example, the **Direction** setting in **Edit Filter Rule** will ask you specify IP or IP range for WAN or LAN or any IP address. If you choose LAN as the **Interface** here, and choose LAN as the direction setting in **Edit Filter Rule**, then all the IP addresses specified with LAN interface will be opened for you to choose in **Edit Filter Rule** page.

**Address Type** Determine the address type for the IP address.  
 Select **Single Address** if this object contains one IP address only.  
 Select **Range Address** if this object contains several IPs within a range.  
 Select **Subnet Address** if this object contains one subnet for IP address.  
 Select **Any Address** if this object contains any IP address.

**Start IP Address** Type the start IP address for Single Address type.

**End IP Address** Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected.

**Subnet Mask** Type the subnet mask if the Subnet Address type is selected.

**Invert Selection** If it is checked, all the IP addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.

Below is an example of IP objects settings.

**IP Object Profiles:**

Index	Name	Index
<u>1.</u>	RD Department	<u>17.</u>
<u>2.</u>	Financial Dept.	<u>18.</u>
<u>3.</u>	HR Department	<u>19.</u>
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>

### 3.5.2 IP Group

This page allows you to bind several IP objects into one IP group.

[Objects Setting >> IP Group](#)

**IP Group Table:** [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

[Objects Setting >> IP Group](#)

**Profile Index : 1**

Name:

Interface:  ▾

**Available IP Objects**

1-RD Department

2-Financial Dept.

3-HR Department

>>

<<

**Selected IP Objects**

**Name** Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.

**Interface** Choose WAN, LAN or Any to display all the available IP objects with the specified interface.

**Available IP Objects** All the available IP objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box.

**Selected IP Objects** Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

### 3.5.3 Service Type Object

You can set up to 96 sets of Service Type Objects with different conditions.

[Objects Setting >> Service Type Object](#)

Service Type Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

[Objects Setting >> Service Type Object Setup](#)

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text" value="WWW"/>
Protocol	TCP <input type="text" value="6"/>
Source Port	= <input type="text" value="1"/> ~ <input type="text" value="65535"/>
Destination Port	= <input type="text" value="80"/> ~ <input type="text" value="80"/>

**Name** Type a name for this profile.

**Protocol** Specify the protocol(s) which this profile will apply to.

TCP	<input type="text" value="6"/>
-----	--------------------------------

- Any
- ICMP
- IGMP
- TCP
- UDP
- TCP/UDP
- Other

**Source/Destination Port** **Source Port** and the **Destination Port** column are available for TCP/UDP protocol. It can be ignored for other protocols. The filter rule will filter out any port number.

(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this profile.

(!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.

(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.

(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

Below is an example of service type objects settings.

**Service Type Object Profiles:**

Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	SIP
<a href="#">2.</a>	RTP
<a href="#">3.</a>	

### 3.5.4 Service Type Group

This page allows you to bind several service types into one group.

[Objects Setting >> Service Type Group](#)

Service Type Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Group	Name	Group	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default**

Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Profile Index : 1

Name:

**Available Service Type Objects**

1-SIP  
2-RTP

>>

<<

**Selected Service Type Objects**

- Name** Type a name for this profile.
- Available Service Type Objects** You can add IP objects from IP Objects page. All the available IP objects will be shown in this box.
- Selected Service Type Objects** Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

### 3.5.5 Keyword Object

You can set 200 keyword object profiles for choosing as black /white list in **CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile.**

Keyword Object Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-100](#) >>
[Next](#) >>

- Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.
- Click the number under Index column for setting in detail.

Profile Index : 1

Name	<input type="text"/>
Contents	<input type="text"/>

**Limit of Contents:** Max 3 Words and 63 Characters.  
Each word should be separated by a single space.

You can replace a character with %HEX.  
Example:  
Contents: backdoo%72 virus keep%20out

Result:

1. backdoor
2. virus
3. keep out

OK Clear Cancel

- Name** Type a name for this profile, e.g., game.
- Contents** Type the content for such profile. For example, type *gambling* as Contents. When you browse the webpage, the page with gambling information will be watched out and be passed/blocked based on the configuration on Firewall settings.

### 3.5.6 Keyword Group

This page allows you to bind several keyword objects into one group. The keyword groups set here will be chosen as black /white list in CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile.

Keyword Group Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	Index	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">9.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">10.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">11.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">12.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">13.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">14.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">15.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">16.</a>	

- Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.
- Click the number under Index column for setting in detail.

Profile Index : 1

Name:

**Available Keyword Objects**

>>

<<

**Selected Keyword Objects(Max 8 Objects)**

- Name** Type a name for this group.
- Available Keyword Objects** You can gather keyword objects from Keyword Object page within one keyword group. All the available Keyword objects that you have created will be shown in this box.
- Selected Keyword Objects** Click  button to add the selected Keyword objects in this box.

### 3.5.7 File Extension Object

This page allows you to set eight profiles which will be applied in **CSM>>URL Content Filter**. All the files with the extension names specified in these profiles will be processed according to the chosen action.

Profile 1 with name of “default” is the default profile, some files with the file extensions specified in this profile will be ignored and not be scanned by Vigor router.

File Extension Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">5.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">6.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">8.</a>	

- Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.
- Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object Setup

Profile Index: 1      Profile Name:

Categories	File Extensions													
Image <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .bmp	<input type="checkbox"/> .dib	<input type="checkbox"/> .gif	<input type="checkbox"/> .jpeg	<input type="checkbox"/> .jpg	<input type="checkbox"/> .jpg2	<input type="checkbox"/> .jp2	<input type="checkbox"/> .pct	<input type="checkbox"/> .pcx	<input type="checkbox"/> .pic	<input type="checkbox"/> .pict	<input type="checkbox"/> .png	<input type="checkbox"/> .tif	<input type="checkbox"/> .tiff
Video <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .asf	<input type="checkbox"/> .avi	<input type="checkbox"/> .mov	<input type="checkbox"/> .mpe	<input type="checkbox"/> .mpeg	<input type="checkbox"/> .mpg	<input type="checkbox"/> .mp4	<input type="checkbox"/> .qt	<input type="checkbox"/> .rm	<input type="checkbox"/> .wmv	<input type="checkbox"/> .3gp	<input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp	<input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp2	<input type="checkbox"/> .3g2
Audio														
Compression <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .ace	<input type="checkbox"/> .arj	<input type="checkbox"/> .bzip2	<input type="checkbox"/> .bz2	<input type="checkbox"/> .cab	<input type="checkbox"/> .gz	<input type="checkbox"/> .gzip	<input type="checkbox"/> .rar	<input type="checkbox"/> .sit	<input type="checkbox"/> .zip				
Execution <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> .bas	<input type="checkbox"/> .bat	<input type="checkbox"/> .com	<input type="checkbox"/> .exe	<input type="checkbox"/> .inf	<input type="checkbox"/> .pif	<input type="checkbox"/> .reg	<input type="checkbox"/> .scr						

**Profile Name**      Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the items of file extension that will be processed in the router. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

### 3.5.8 IM Object

You can define policy profiles for IM (Instant Messenger) application. The object profile(s) configured here will be seen and adopted in **CSM>>APP Enforcement Profile** page.

Objects Setting >> IM Object Profile

IM Profile Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

[Objects Setting >> IM Object Profile](#)

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name:

Check for Disallow:

Advanced Management				
Activity / Application	MSN	YahooIM	AIM(<= v5.9)	ICQ
Login	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Message	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
File Transfer	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Game	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Conference	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Other Activities	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>

IM Application				VoIP
<input type="checkbox"/> AIM6	<input type="checkbox"/> QQ	<input type="checkbox"/> iChat	<input type="checkbox"/> Jabber/GoogleTalk	<input type="checkbox"/> Skype
<input type="checkbox"/> GoogleChat	<input type="checkbox"/> XFire	<input type="checkbox"/> GaduGadu	<input type="checkbox"/> Paltalk	<input type="checkbox"/> Kubao
<input type="checkbox"/> Qnext	<input type="checkbox"/> Meetro	<input type="checkbox"/> POCO/PP365	<input type="checkbox"/> AresChat	<input type="checkbox"/> Gizmo
<input type="checkbox"/> AliWW	<input type="checkbox"/> KC	<input type="checkbox"/> Lava-Lava	<input type="checkbox"/> ICU2	<input type="checkbox"/> SIP
<input type="checkbox"/> iSpQ	<input type="checkbox"/> UC	<input type="checkbox"/> MobileMSN		

Web IM ( * = more than one address)					
<input type="checkbox"/> WebIM URLs	<a href="#">eMessenger</a>	<a href="#">WebMSN</a>	<a href="#">Meebo*</a>	<a href="#">eBuddy</a>	<a href="#">ILoveIM*</a>
	<a href="#">ICQ2Go*</a>	<a href="#">goowy*</a>	<a href="#">IMhaha*</a>	<a href="#">getMessenger</a>	<a href="#">IMUnitive*</a>
	<a href="#">Wablet*</a>	<a href="#">mabber*</a>	<a href="#">MSN2Go*</a>	<a href="#">KoolIM</a>	<a href="#">MessengerFX*</a>
	<a href="#">MessengerAdictos</a>	<a href="#">WebYahooIM</a>			

**Profile Name** Type a name for the CSM profile.

**Check for Disallow** Check the items that disallow to use. Any device that uses such profile might not be allowed to access into the forbidden items.

### 3.5.9 P2P Object

You can define policy profiles for P2P (Point-to-Point) application. The object profile(s) configured here will be seen and adopted in **CSM>>APP Enforcement Profile** page.

P2P Profile Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name:

Check for Disallow:

Protocol	Applications
<input type="checkbox"/> SoulSeek	SoulSeek
<input type="checkbox"/> eDonkey	eDonkey, eMule, Shareaza
<input type="checkbox"/> FastTrack	Kazaa, BearShare, iMesh
<input type="checkbox"/> OpenFT	KCeasy, FilePipe
<input type="checkbox"/> Gnutella	BearShare, Limewire, Shareaza, Foxy
<input type="checkbox"/> OpenNap	Lopster, XNap, WinLop
<input type="checkbox"/> BitTorrent	BitTorrent, BitSpirit, BitComet
<input type="checkbox"/> Winny	Winny, WinMX, Share

Other P2P Applications			
<input type="checkbox"/> Xunlei	<input type="checkbox"/> Vagaa	<input type="checkbox"/> PP365	<input type="checkbox"/> POCO
<input type="checkbox"/> Clubbox	<input type="checkbox"/> Ares	<input type="checkbox"/> ezPeer	<input type="checkbox"/> Pando

**Profile Name** Type a name for the CSM profile.

**Check for Disallow** Check the items that disallow to use. Any device that uses such profile might not be allowed to access into the forbidden items.

In the above figure, BitTorrent protocol is disallowed if you apply such object profile as filtering rule (setting in **Firewall**).

### 3.5.10 Protocol Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for applications in protocol communication. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>> APP Enforcement Profile** for filtering.

[Objects Setting >> Protocol Object Profile](#)

Protocol Profile Table: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. Internet protocols are listed in the page for you to choose to disallow people using. Any computer controlled or passed through the router will be restricted by this profile if it tries to use the protocol to communicate with others.

Simple check the box (es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>> APP Enforcement Profile** page, you can use **Protocol Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

[Objects Setting >> Protocol Object Profile](#)

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name:

Check for Disallow:

Protocol				
<input type="checkbox"/> DNS	<input type="checkbox"/> FTP	<input type="checkbox"/> HTTP	<input type="checkbox"/> IMAP	<input type="checkbox"/> IRC
<input type="checkbox"/> NNTP	<input type="checkbox"/> POP3	<input type="checkbox"/> SMB	<input type="checkbox"/> SMTP	<input type="checkbox"/> SNMP
<input type="checkbox"/> SSH	<input type="checkbox"/> SSL/TLS	<input type="checkbox"/> TELNET		

**Profile Name** Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the protocols that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

### 3.5.11 Misc Object

You can define policy profiles for Misc application. The object profile(s) configured here will be seen and adopted in **CSM>>IM/P2P Profile** page.

[Objects Setting >> Misc Object Profile](#)

Misc Profile Table: [| Set to Factory Default |](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default**      Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Objects Setting >> Misc Object Profile

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Check for Disallow:

Tunneling				
<input type="checkbox"/> Socks4/5	<input type="checkbox"/> PGPNet	<input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Proxy	<input type="checkbox"/> Tor	<input type="checkbox"/> VNN
<input type="checkbox"/> SoftEther	<input type="checkbox"/> MS TEREDO	<input type="checkbox"/> Wujie/UltraSurf	<input type="checkbox"/> Hamachi	<input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Tunnel
<input type="checkbox"/> Ping Tunnel	<input type="checkbox"/> TinyVPN	<input type="checkbox"/> RealTunnel	<input type="checkbox"/> DynaPass	

Streaming				
<input type="checkbox"/> MMS	<input type="checkbox"/> RTSP	<input type="checkbox"/> TVAnts	<input type="checkbox"/> PPStream	<input type="checkbox"/> PPlive
<input type="checkbox"/> FeiDian	<input type="checkbox"/> UUSee	<input type="checkbox"/> NSPlayer	<input type="checkbox"/> PCAST	<input type="checkbox"/> TVKoo
<input type="checkbox"/> SopCast	<input type="checkbox"/> UDLiveX	<input type="checkbox"/> TVUPlayer	<input type="checkbox"/> MySee	<input type="checkbox"/> Joost
<input type="checkbox"/> FlashVideo	<input type="checkbox"/> SilverLight	<input type="checkbox"/> Slingbox	<input type="checkbox"/> QVOD	

Remote Control				
<input type="checkbox"/> VNC	<input type="checkbox"/> Radmin	<input type="checkbox"/> SpyAnywhere	<input type="checkbox"/> ShowMyPC	<input type="checkbox"/> LogMeIn
<input type="checkbox"/> TeamViewer	<input type="checkbox"/> Gogrok	<input type="checkbox"/> RemoteControlPro	<input type="checkbox"/> CrossLoop	<input type="checkbox"/> WindowsRDP
<input type="checkbox"/> pcAnywhere	<input type="checkbox"/> Timbuktu	<input type="checkbox"/> WindowsLiveSync	<input type="checkbox"/> SharedView	

Web HD				
<input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Upload	<input type="checkbox"/> HiNet SafeBox	<input type="checkbox"/> MS SkyDrive	<input type="checkbox"/> GDoc Upload	<input type="checkbox"/> ADrive
<input type="checkbox"/> MyOtherDrive	<input type="checkbox"/> Mozy	<input type="checkbox"/> BoxNet	<input type="checkbox"/> OfficeLive	

**Profile Name**

Type a name for the CSM profile.

**Check for Disallow**

Check the items that disallow to use. Any device that uses such profile might not be allowed to access into the forbidden items.

## 3.6 CSM

CSM is an abbreviation of **Content Security Management** which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

**Note:** The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter.



### 3.6.1 APP Enforcement Profile

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserve attitude in order to reduce employee misuse during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time.

You can define policy profiles for IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer)/Protocol application. This page allows you to set 32 profiles for different requirements. The APP Enforcement Profile will be applied in **Default Rule of Firewall>>General Setup** for filtering.

[CSM >> APP Enforcement Profile](#)

APP Enforcement Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">17.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">18.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">19.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">20.</a>	
<a href="#">5.</a>		<a href="#">21.</a>	
<a href="#">6.</a>		<a href="#">22.</a>	
<a href="#">7.</a>		<a href="#">23.</a>	
<a href="#">8.</a>		<a href="#">24.</a>	
<a href="#">9.</a>		<a href="#">25.</a>	
<a href="#">10.</a>		<a href="#">26.</a>	
<a href="#">11.</a>		<a href="#">27.</a>	
<a href="#">12.</a>		<a href="#">28.</a>	
<a href="#">13.</a>		<a href="#">29.</a>	
<a href="#">14.</a>		<a href="#">30.</a>	
<a href="#">15.</a>		<a href="#">31.</a>	
<a href="#">16.</a>		<a href="#">32.</a>	

**Set to Factory Default**

Clear all profiles.

**Profile**

Display the number of the profile which allows you to click to set different policy.

**Name**

Display the name of the APP Enforcement Profile.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

<b>IM Object</b>	None ▾
<b>P2P Object</b>	None ▾
<b>Protocol Object</b>	None ▾
<b>Misc Object</b>	None ▾

**Profile Name** Type a name for the CSM profile.

Each profile can contain three objects settings, IM Object, P2P Object and Misc Object. Such profile can be applied in the **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Firewall>>Filter Setup** pages as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

### 3.6.2 URL Content Filter Profile

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user’s access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won’t sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It’s very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user’s system.

Based on the list of user defined keywords, the **URL Content Filter** facility in Vigor router inspects the URL string in every outgoing HTTP request. No matter the URL string is found full or partial matched with a keyword, the Vigor router will block the associated HTTP connection.

For example, if you add key words such as “sex”, Vigor router will limit web access to web sites or web pages such as “www.sex.com”, ”www.backdoor.net/images/sex/p\_386.html”. Or you may simply specify the full or partial URL such as “www.sex.com” or “sex.com”.

Also the Vigor router will discard any request that tries to retrieve the malicious code.

Click **CSM** and click **URL Content Filter Profile** to open the setup page.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

URL Content Filter Profile Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>		<a href="#">5.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">6.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">8.</a>	

**Administration Message** (Max 255 characters)

```
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by URL Content Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further information.</center></body>
```

You can set eight profiles as URL content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

**Profile Index: 1**

**Profile Name:**

**Priority:**  **Log:**

**1.URL Access Control**

Enable URL Access Control       Prevent web access from IP address

Action:       Group/Object Selections:

**2.Web Feature**

Enable Restrict Web Feature

Action:      Cookie     Proxy    **File Extension Profile:**

**Profile Name**

Type the name for such profile.

**Priority**

It determines the action that this router will apply.

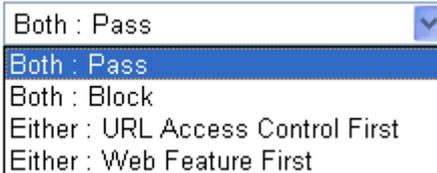
**Both: Pass** – The router will let all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below passing through. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.

**Both:Block** –The router will block all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.

**Either: URL Access Control First** – When all the packages

matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for URL first, then Web feature second.

**Either: Web Feature First** –When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for web feature first, then URL second.

**Priority:**  Both : Pass  
Both : Pass  
Both : Block  
Either : URL Access Control First  
Either : Web Feature First

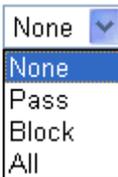
**Log**

**None** – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.

**Pass** – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.

**Block** – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.

**All** – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.

**Log:**  None  
None  
Pass  
Block  
All

**URL Access Control**

**Enable URL Access Control** - Check the box to activate URL Access Control. Note that the priority for **URL Access Control** is higher than **Restrict Web Feature**. If the web content match the setting set in URL Access Control, the router will execute the action specified in this field and ignore the action specified under Restrict Web Feature.

**Prevent web access from IP address** - Check the box to deny any web surfing activity using IP address, such as http://202.6.3.2. The reason for this is to prevent someone dodges the URL Access Control. You must clear your browser cache first so that the URL content filtering facility operates properly on a web page that you visited before.

**Action** – This setting is available only when **Either: URL Access Control First** or **Either: Web Feature First** is selected. **Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

**Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the keyword set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Action:

 Block  
Pass  
Block

**Group/Object Selections** – The Vigor router provides several frames for users to define keywords and each frame supports multiple keywords. The keyword could be a noun, a partial noun,

or a complete URL string. Multiple keywords within a frame are separated by space, comma, or semicolon. In addition, the maximal length of each frame is 32-character long. After specifying keywords, the Vigor router will decline the connection request to the website whose URL string matched to any user-defined keyword. It should be noticed that the more simplified the blocking keyword list, the more efficiently the Vigor router perform.

**Object/Group Edit**

<b>Keyword Object</b>	None ▾
or Keyword Object	None ▾
or <b>Keyword Group</b>	None ▾
or Keyword Group	None ▾

OK Close

**Web Feature**

**Enable Restrict Web Feature** - Check this box to make the keyword being blocked or passed.

**Action** - This setting is available only when **Either : URL Access Control First** or **Either : Web Feature Firs** is selected. **Pass** allows accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

**Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

**Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

**Cookie** - Check the box to filter out the cookie transmission from inside to outside world to protect the local user's privacy.

**Proxy** - Check the box to reject any proxy transmission. To control efficiently the limited-bandwidth usage, it will be of great value to provide the blocking mechanism that filters out the multimedia files downloading from web pages.

**Upload** – Check the box to reject any file upload job.

**File Extension Profile** – Choose one of the profiles that you configured in **Object Setting>> File Extension Objects**

previously for passing or blocking the file downloading.

**File Extension Profile:**  

### 3.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

Service Activation Wizard allows you to use trial version or update the license of WCF directly without accessing into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

However, if you use the **Web Content Filter Profile** page to activate WCF feature, it is necessary for you to access into the server (**MyVigor**) located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Therefore, you need to register an account on <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for using corresponding service. Please refer to section 4.1 for more information of creating MyVigor account.

**Note:** If you have used **Service Activation Wizard** to activate WCF service, you can skip this section.

WCF adopts the mechanism developed and offered by certain service provider (e.g., DrayTek). No matter activating WCF feature or getting a new license for web content filter, you have to click **Activate** to satisfy your request. Be aware that service provider matching with VigorPro5510 currently offers a period of time for trial version for users to experiment. If you want to purchase a formal edition, simply contact with the channel partner or your dealer.

Click **CSM** and click **Web Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page. The default setting for Setup Query Server /Setup Test Server is **auto-selected**. You can choose another server for your necessity by clicking **Find more** to open <http://myvigor.draytek.com> for searching another qualified and suitable one. Next, click the link of **Test a site to verify whether it is categorized** to do the verification.

**CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile**

**Web-Filter License** [Activate](#)  
[Status: **Not Activated**]

<b>Setup Query Server</b>	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>
<b>Setup Test Server</b>	<input type="text" value="auto-selected"/>	<a href="#">Find more</a>
<a href="#">Test a site to verify whether it is categorized</a>		

**Web Content Filter Profile Table:** [Set to Factory Default](#)

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	Default	<a href="#">5.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">6.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">7.</a>	
<a href="#">4.</a>		<a href="#">8.</a>	

**Administration Message** (Max 255 characters) Cache :

```
<body><center><br><br><br><p>The requested Web page <br> from %SIP% <br>to %URL%
<br>that is categorized with %CL% <br>has been blocked by %RNAME% Web Content
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further
information.</center></body>
```

<b>Activate</b>	Click it to access into MyVigor for activating WCF service.
<b>Setup Query Server</b>	It is recommend for you to use the default setting, auto-selected. You need to specify a server for categorize searching when you type URL in browser based on the web content filter profile.
<b>Setup Test Server</b>	It is recommend for you to use the default setting, auto-selected. By the way, you can click the link of <b>Test a site to verify whether it is categorized</b> to access into the test server selected.
<b>Find more</b>	Click it to open <a href="http://myvigor.draytek.com">http://myvigor.draytek.com</a> for searching another qualified and suitable server.
<b>Test a site to verify whether it is categorized</b>	Click this link to do the verification.
<b>Set to Factory Default</b>	Click this link to retrieve the factory settings.
<b>Cache</b>	<p><b>None</b> – the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF precisely, however, the processing rate is normal. Such item can provide the most accurate URL matching.</p> <p><b>L1</b> – the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the URL has been accessed previously, it will be stored for a short time (about 1 second) in the router to be accessed quickly if required. Such item can provide accurate URL matching with faster rate.</p> <p><b>L2</b> – the router will check the URL that the user wants to access via WCF. If the data has been accessed previously, the IP addresses of source and destination IDs will be memorized for a short time (about 1 second) in the router. When the user tries to access the same destination ID, the router will check it by comparing the record stored. If it matches, the page will be retrieved quickly. Such item can provide URL matching with the fastest rate.</p> <p><b>L1+L2 Cache</b> – the router will check the URL with fast processing rate combining the feature of L1 and L2.</p>

Eight profiles are provided here as Web content filters. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page. The items listed in Categories will be changed according to the different service providers. If you have and activate another web content filter license, the items will be changed simultaneously. All of the configuration made for web content filter will be deleted automatically. Therefore, please backup your data before you change the web content filter license.

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name:

Log:

**Black/White List**

Enable

Action:

Action:

Groups	Categories		
Child Protection <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alcohol & Tobacco <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hate & Intolerance <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Porn & Sexually <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> School Cheating	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Criminal Activity <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Illegal Drug <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Violence <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sex Education	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gambling <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nudity <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Weapons <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tasteless
<input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Search Engine,Portals <input type="checkbox"/> Malware <input type="checkbox"/> Illegal Software	<input type="checkbox"/> Social Networking <input type="checkbox"/> Botnets <input type="checkbox"/> Information Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Spam Sites <input type="checkbox"/> Hacking <input type="checkbox"/> Peer-to-Peer
Other <input type="button" value="Select All"/> <input type="button" value="Clear All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Adv & Pop-Ups <input type="checkbox"/> Compromised <input type="checkbox"/> Finance <input type="checkbox"/> News <input type="checkbox"/> Politics <input type="checkbox"/> Restaurants & Dining <input type="checkbox"/> General <input type="checkbox"/> Image Sharing <input type="checkbox"/> Private IP Addresses	<input type="checkbox"/> Arts <input type="checkbox"/> Dating & Personals <input type="checkbox"/> Government <input type="checkbox"/> Non-profits & NGOs <input type="checkbox"/> Real Estate <input type="checkbox"/> Shopping <input type="checkbox"/> Cults <input type="checkbox"/> Network Errors <input type="checkbox"/> Uncategorized Sites	<input type="checkbox"/> Transportation <input type="checkbox"/> Education <input type="checkbox"/> Health & Medicine <input type="checkbox"/> Personal Sites <input type="checkbox"/> Religion <input type="checkbox"/> Translators <input type="checkbox"/> Greeting cards <input type="checkbox"/> Parked Domains

**Profile Name**

Type a name for such profile.

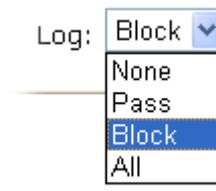
**Log**

**None** – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.

**Pass** – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.

**Block** – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.

**All** – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.



**White/Black List**

**Enable** – Activate white/black list function for such profile.

**Group/Object Selections** – Click **Edit** to choose the group or object profile as the content of white/black list.

**Pass - allow** accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on **Group/Object Selections**. If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.

**Block - restrict** accessing into the corresponding webpage with the characters listed on **Group/Object Selections**.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, they will be processed with the categories listed on the box below.

**Action**

**Pass** - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.

**Block** - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

## 3.7 Bandwidth Management

Below shows the menu items for Bandwidth Management.



### 3.7.1 Sessions Limit

A PC with private IP address can access to the Internet via NAT router. The router will generate the records of NAT sessions for such connection. The P2P (Peer to Peer) applications (e.g., BitTorrent) always need many sessions for procession and also they will occupy over resources which might result in important accesses impacted. To solve the problem, you can use limit session to limit the session procession for specified Hosts.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Sessions Limit** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Sessions Limit

**Sessions Limit**

Enable  Disable

Default Max Sessions:

**Limitation List**

Index	Start IP	End IP	Max Sessions
-------	----------	--------	--------------

**Specific Limitation**

Start IP:  End IP:

Maximum Sessions:

**Administration Message** (Max 127 characters)

You have reached the maximum number of permitted Internet sessions.<p>Please close one or more applications to allow furthur Int

**Time Schedule**

Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup: , , ,

**Note:** Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit session, simply click **Enable** and set the default session limit.

<b>Enable</b>	Click this button to activate the function of limit session.
<b>Disable</b>	Click this button to close the function of limit session.
<b>Default session limit</b>	Defines the default session number used for each computer in LAN.
<b>Limitation List</b>	Displays a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.
<b>Start IP</b>	Defines the start IP address for limit session.
<b>End IP</b>	Defines the end IP address for limit session.
<b>Maximum Sessions</b>	Defines the available session number for each host in the specific range of IP addresses. If you do not set the session number in this field, the system will use the default session limit for the specific limitation you set for each index.
<b>Add</b>	Adds the specific session limitation onto the list above.
<b>Edit</b>	Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.
<b>Delete</b>	Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.
<b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b>	You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application – Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

### 3.7.2 Bandwidth Limit

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Limit Bandwidth to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Bandwidth Limit** to open the web page.

[Bandwidth Management >> Bandwidth Limit](#)

**Bandwidth Limit**

**Enable**
 Apply to 2nd Subnet
  **Disable**

Default TX Limit:  Kbps
 Default RX Limit:  Kbps (0: Unlimited)

Allow auto adjustment to make the best utilization of **available bandwidth**.

**Limitation List**

Index	Start IP	End IP	TX limit	RX limit	Shared

**Specific Limitation**

Start IP:  End IP:

Each
  Shared
 TX Limit:  Kbps
 RX Limit:  Kbps (0: Unlimited)

---

**Time Schedule**

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup: , , ,

**Note:** Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit bandwidth, simply click **Enable** and set the default upstream and downstream limit.

- Enable** Click this button to activate the function of limit bandwidth.
- Disable** Click this button to close the function of limit bandwidth.
- Default TX limit** Define the default speed of the upstream for each computer in LAN.
- Default RX limit** Define the default speed of the downstream for each computer in LAN.
- Allow auto adjustment to make the best utilization of available bandwidth** Router will detect if there is enough bandwidth remained for using according to the bandwidth limit set by the user. If yes, the router will adjust the available bandwidth for users to enhance the total utilization.
- Limitation List** Display a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.
- Start IP** Define the start IP address for limit bandwidth.
- End IP** Define the end IP address for limit bandwidth.

<b>Each/Shared</b>	Select <b>Each</b> to make each IP within the range of Start IP and End IP having the same speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields; select <b>Shared</b> to make all the IPs within the range of Start IP and End IP share the speed defined in TX limit and RX limit fields.
<b>TX limit</b>	Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.
<b>RX limit</b>	Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.
<b>Add</b>	Add the specific speed limitation onto the list above.
<b>Edit</b>	Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.
<b>Delete</b>	Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.
<b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b>	You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application – Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

### 3.7.3 Quality of Service

Deploying QoS (Quality of Service) management to guarantee that all applications receive the service levels required and sufficient bandwidth to meet performance expectations is indeed one important aspect of modern enterprise network.

One reason for QoS is that numerous TCP-based applications tend to continually increase their transmission rate and consume all available bandwidth, which is called TCP slow start. If other applications are not protected by QoS, it will detract much from their performance in the overcrowded network. This is especially essential to those are low tolerant of loss, delay or jitter (delay variation).

Another reason is due to congestions at network intersections where speeds of interconnected circuits mismatch or traffic aggregates, packets will queue up and traffic can be throttled back to a lower speed. If there's no defined priority to specify which packets should be discarded (or in another term "dropped") from an overflowing queue, packets of sensitive applications mentioned above might be the ones to drop off. How this will affect application performance?

There are two components within Primary configuration of QoS deployment:

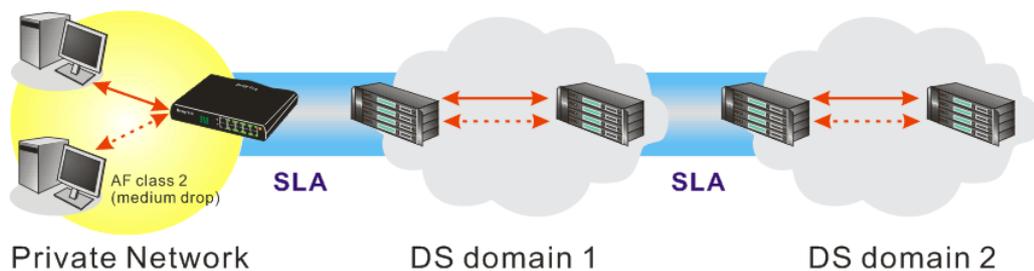
- **Classification:** Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.
- **Scheduling:** Based on classification of service level to assign packets to queues and associated service types

The basic QoS implementation in Vigor routers is to classify and schedule packets based on the service type information in the IP header. For instance, to ensure the connection with the headquarter, a teleworker may enforce an index of QoS Control to reserve bandwidth for HTTPS connection while using lots of application at the same time.

One more larger-scale implementation of QoS network is to apply DSCP (Differentiated Service Code Point) and IP Precedence disciplines at Layer 3. Compared with legacy IP Precedence that uses Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header to define 8 service classes, DSCP is a successor creating 64 classes possible with backward IP Precedence compatibility.

In a QoS-enabled network, or Differentiated Service (DiffServ or DS) framework, a DS domain owner should sign a Service License Agreement (SLA) with other DS domain owners to define the service level provided toward traffic from different domains. Then each DS node in these domains will perform the priority treatment. This is called per-hop-behavior (PHB). The definition of PHB includes Expedited Forwarding (EF), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Best Effort (BE). AF defines the four classes of delivery (or forwarding) classes and three levels of drop precedence in each class.

Vigor routers as edge routers of DS domain shall check the marked DSCP value in the IP header of bypassing traffic, thus to allocate certain amount of resource execute appropriate policing, classification or scheduling. The core routers in the backbone will do the same checking before executing treatments in order to ensure service-level consistency throughout the whole QoS-enabled network.



However, each node may take different attitude toward packets with high priority marking since it may bind with the business deal of SLA among different DS domain owners. It's not easy to achieve deterministic and consistent high-priority QoS traffic throughout the whole network with merely Vigor router's effort.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Quality of Service** to open the web page.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

#### General Setup

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>

#### Class Rule

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

This page displays the QoS settings result of the WAN interface. Click the **Setup** link to access into next page for the general setup of WAN (1/2) interface. As to class rule, simply click the **Edit** link to access into next for configuration.

You can configure general setup for the WAN interface, edit the Class Rule, and edit the Service Type for the Class Rule for your request.

### General Setup for WAN Interface

When you click **Setup**, you can configure the bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface. There are four queues allowed for QoS control. The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. Yet, the last one is reserved for the packets which are not suitable for the user-defined class rules.

**WAN1 General Setup**

**Enable the QoS Control** OUT

WAN Inbound Bandwidth 10000 Kbps  
 WAN Outbound Bandwidth 10000 Kbps

Note: Before enable QoS, you should test the real bandwidth first.  
 QoS may not work properly if the bandwidth is not accurate.

Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1		<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">25</span> %
Class 2		<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">25</span> %
Class 3		<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">25</span> %
	Others	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">25</span> %

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited\_bandwidth Ratio 25 %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

OK
Clear
Cancel

**Enable the QoS Control** The factory default for this setting is checked. Please also define which traffic the QoS Control settings will apply to.  
**IN-** apply to incoming traffic only.  
**OUT-** apply to outgoing traffic only.  
**BOTH-** apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic.  
 Check this box and click **OK**, then click **Setup** link again. You will see the **Online Statistics** link appearing on this page.

**WAN Inbound Bandwidth** It allows you to set the connecting rate of data input for WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 1000kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps.

**WAN Outbound Bandwidth** It allows you to set the connecting rate of data output for WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 256kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps.

**Note:** The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

**Reserved Bandwidth Ratio** It is reserved for the group index in the form of ratio of **reserved bandwidth to upstream speed** and **reserved bandwidth to downstream speed**.

**Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** Check this and set the limited bandwidth ratio on the right field. This is a protection of TCP application traffic since UDP application traffic such as streaming video will exhaust lots of bandwidth.

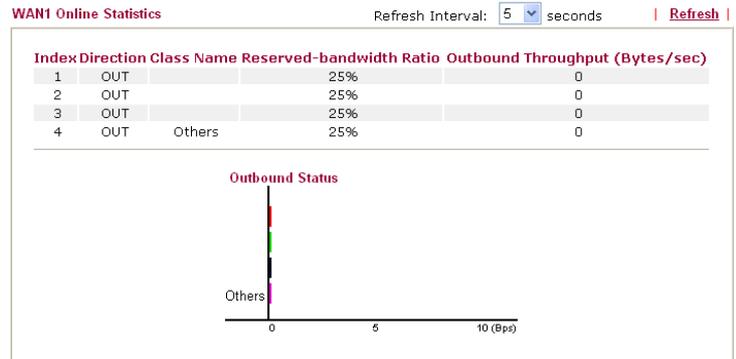
**Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize** The difference in bandwidth between download and upload are great in ADSL2+ environment. For the download speed might be impacted by the uploading TCP ACK, you can

check this box to push ACK of upload faster to speed the network traffic.

**Limited\_bandwidth Ratio** The ratio typed here is reserved for limited bandwidth of UDP application.

**Online Statistics** Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference. This link will be seen only if you click **OK** in WAN1/WAN2 General Setup web page and click Setup again (for WAN1/WAN2) on the **Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service**.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)



### Edit the Class Rule for QoS

The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. To add, edit or delete the class rule, please click the **Edit** link of that one.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

#### General Setup

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>

#### Class Rule

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page. Now you can define the name for that Class. In this case, “Test” is used as the name of Class Index #1.

Class Index #1

Name

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty	-	-	-	-

For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

Rule Edit

ACT

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

**Note:** Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

**ACT**

Check this box to invoke these settings.

**Local Address**

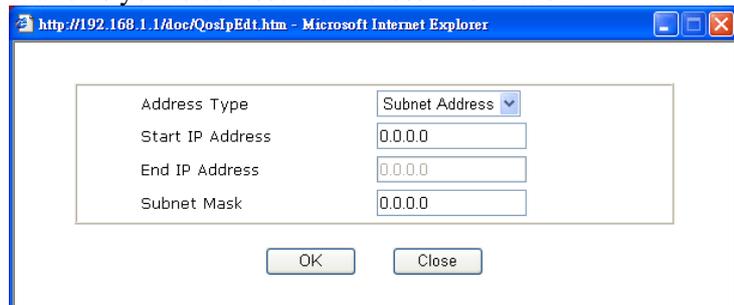
Click the **Edit** button to set the local IP address (on LAN) for the rule.

**Remote Address**

Click the **Edit** button to set the remote IP address (on LAN/WAN) for the rule.

**Edit**

It allows you to edit source address information.



**Address Type** – Determine the address type for the source address.

For **Single Address**, you have to fill in Start IP address.

For **Range Address**, you have to fill in Start IP address and End IP address.

For **Subnet Address**, you have to fill in Start IP address and Subnet Mask.

**DiffServ CodePoint**

All the packets of data will be divided with different levels and will be processed according to the level type by the system. Please assign one of the levels of the data for processing with QoS control.

## Service Type

It determines the service type of the data for processing with QoS control. It can also be edited. You can choose the predefined service type from the Service Type drop down list. Those types are predefined in factory. Simply choose the one that you want for using by current QoS.

By the way, you can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit** to open the rule edit page for modification.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### Class Index #1

Name

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 <input type="radio"/>	Active	Any	Any	IP precedence 2	SYSLOG(UDP:514)
2 <input type="radio"/>	Active	192.168.1.15	192.168.1.65	AF Class1 (Low Drop)	FTP(TCP:20)

## Edit the Service Type for Class Rule

To add a new service type, edit or delete an existed service type, please click the **Edit** link under Service Type field.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### General Setup

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>

#### Class Rule

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

User Defined Service Type

NO	Name	Protocol	Port
1	Empty	-	-

For adding a new service type, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Service Type Edit

Service Name	<input type="text"/>
Service Type	TCP <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="text" value="6"/>
Port Configuration	
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Single <input type="radio"/> Range
Port Number	<input type="text" value="0"/> - <input type="text" value="0"/>

**Service Name**

Type in a new service for your request.

**Service Type**

Choose the type (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the new service.

**Port Configuration**

Click **Single** or **Range** as the **Type**. If you select Range, you have to type in the starting port number and the end porting number on the boxes below.

**Port Number** – Type in the starting port number and the end porting number here if you choose Range as the type.

By the way, you can set up to 40 service types. If you want to edit/delete an existed service type, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit/Edit** for modification.

## 3.8 Applications

Below shows the menu items for Applications.



### 3.8.1 Dynamic DNS

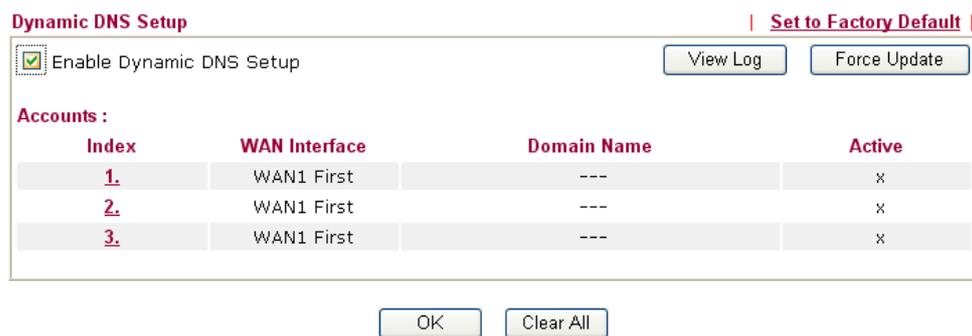
The ISP often provides you with a dynamic IP address when you connect to the Internet via your ISP. It means that the public IP address assigned to your router changes each time you access the Internet. The Dynamic DNS feature lets you assign a domain name to a dynamic WAN IP address. It allows the router to update its online WAN IP address mappings on the specified Dynamic DNS server. Once the router is online, you will be able to use the registered domain name to access the router or internal virtual servers from the Internet. It is particularly helpful if you host a web server, FTP server, or other server behind the router.

Before you use the Dynamic DNS feature, you have to apply for free DDNS service to the DDNS service providers. The router provides up to three accounts from three different DDNS service providers. Basically, Vigor routers are compatible with the DDNS services supplied by most popular DDNS service providers such as [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org), [www.no-ip.com](http://www.no-ip.com), [www.dtdns.com](http://www.dtdns.com), [www.changeip.com](http://www.changeip.com), [www.dynamic-nameserver.com](http://www.dynamic-nameserver.com). You should visit their websites to register your own domain name for the router.

#### Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

1. Assume you have a registered domain name from the DDNS provider, say *hostname.dyndns.org*, and an account with username: *test* and password: *test*.
2. In the DDNS setup menu, check **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup



Index	WAN Interface	Domain Name	Active
<a href="#">1.</a>	WAN1 First	---	x
<a href="#">2.</a>	WAN1 First	---	x
<a href="#">3.</a>	WAN1 First	---	x

#### Set to Factory Default

Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

**Enable Dynamic DNS Setup** Check this box to enable DDNS function.

#### Index

Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of DDNS setup to set account(s).

#### WAN Interface

Display current WAN interface used for accessing Internet.

#### Domain Name

Display the domain name that you set on the setting page of DDNS setup.

- Active** Display if this account is active or inactive.
- View Log** Display DDNS log status.
- Force Update** Force the router updates its information to DDNS server.

3. Select Index number 1 to add an account for the router. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**, and choose correct Service Provider: dyndns.org, type the registered hostname: *hostname* and domain name suffix: dyndns.org in the **Domain Name** block. The following two blocks should be typed your account Login Name: *test* and Password: *test*.

**Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup**

**Index : 1**

Enable Dynamic DNS Account

WAN Interface:

Service Provider:

Service Type:

Domain Name:  .

Login Name:  (max. 23 characters)

Password:  (max. 23 characters)

Wildcards

Backup MX

Mail Extender:

- Enable Dynamic DNS Account** Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2).
- WAN Interface** Select the WAN interface order to apply settings here.
- Service Provider** Select the service provider for the DDNS account.
- Service Type** Select a service type (Dynamic, Custom, Static). If you choose Custom, you can modify the domain that is chosen in the Domain Name field.
- Domain Name** Type in a domain name that you applied previously. Use the drop down list to choose the desired domain.
- Login Name** Type in the login name that you set for applying domain.
- Password** Type in the password that you set for applying domain.

4. Click **OK** button to activate the settings. You will see your setting has been saved.

The Wildcard and Backup MX features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites.

**Disable the Function and Clear all Dynamic DNS Accounts**

In the DDNS setup menu, uncheck **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**, and push **Clear All** button to disable the function and clear all accounts from the router.

**Delete a Dynamic DNS Account**

In the DDNS setup menu, click the **Index** number you want to delete and then push **Clear All** button to delete the account.

### 3.8.2 Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in real time clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

You have to set your time before set schedule. In **System Maintenance>> Time and Date** menu, press **Inquire Time** button to set the Vigor router's clock to current time of your PC. The clock will reset once if you power down or reset the router. There is another way to set up time. You can inquiry an NTP server (a time server) on the Internet to synchronize the router's clock. This method can only be applied when the WAN connection has been built up.

[Applications >> Schedule](#)

Schedule:		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Index	Status	Index	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	x	<a href="#">9.</a>	x
<a href="#">2.</a>	x	<a href="#">10.</a>	x
<a href="#">3.</a>	x	<a href="#">11.</a>	x
<a href="#">4.</a>	x	<a href="#">12.</a>	x
<a href="#">5.</a>	x	<a href="#">13.</a>	x
<a href="#">6.</a>	x	<a href="#">14.</a>	x
<a href="#">7.</a>	x	<a href="#">15.</a>	x
<a href="#">8.</a>	x		

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive

#### Set to Factory Default

Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

#### Index

Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of schedule.

#### Status

Display if this schedule setting is active or inactive.

You can set up to 15 schedules. Then you can apply them to your **Internet Access** or **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN** settings.

To add a schedule, please click any index, say Index No. 1. The detailed settings of the call schedule with index 1 are shown below.

[Applications >> Schedule](#)

**Index No. 1**

Enable Schedule Setup

Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)    2000 | 1 | 1

Start Time (hh:mm)        0 : 0

Duration Time (hh:mm)    0 : 0

Action                      Force On

Idle Timeout                0 minute(s).(max. 255, 0 for default)

---

How Often

Once

Weekdays

Sun    Mon    Tue    Wed    Thu    Fri    Sat

OK    Clear    Cancel

<b>Enable Schedule Setup</b>	Check to enable the schedule.
<b>Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)</b>	Specify the starting date of the schedule.
<b>Start Time (hh:mm)</b>	Specify the starting time of the schedule.
<b>Duration Time (hh:mm)</b>	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule.
<b>Action</b>	Specify which action Call Schedule should apply during the period of the schedule. <b>Force On</b> -Force the connection to be always on. <b>Force Down</b> -Force the connection to be always down. <b>Enable Dial-On-Demand</b> -Specify the connection to be dial-on-demand and the value of idle timeout should be specified in <b>Idle Timeout</b> field. <b>Disable Dial-On-Demand</b> -Specify the connection to be up when it has traffic on the line. Once there is no traffic over idle timeout, the connection will be down and never up again during the schedule.
<b>Idle Timeout</b>	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule. <b>How often</b> -Specify how often the schedule will be applied <b>Once</b> -The schedule will be applied just once <b>Weekdays</b> -Specify which days in one week should perform the schedule.

### Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

**Office Hour:**  **(Force On)**  **Mon - Sun 9:00 am to 6:00 pm**

1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.

### 3.8.3 RADIUS

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

**Applications >> RADIUS**

**RADIUS Setup**

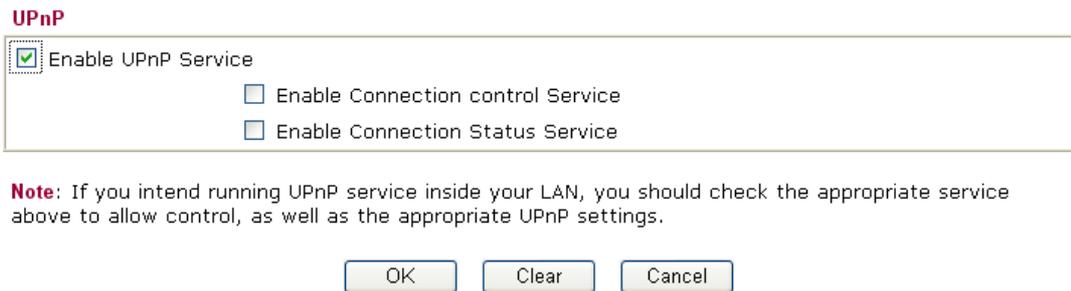
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Server IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Destination Port	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
Shared Secret	<input type="text"/>
Confirm Shared Secret	<input type="text"/>

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Enable</b>                | Check to enable RADIUS client feature   |
| <b>Server IP Address</b>     | Enter the IP address of RADIUS server   |
| <b>Destination Port</b>      | The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138.  |
| <b>Shared Secret</b>         | The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. |
| <b>Confirm Shared Secret</b> | Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation.   |

### 3.8.4 UPnP

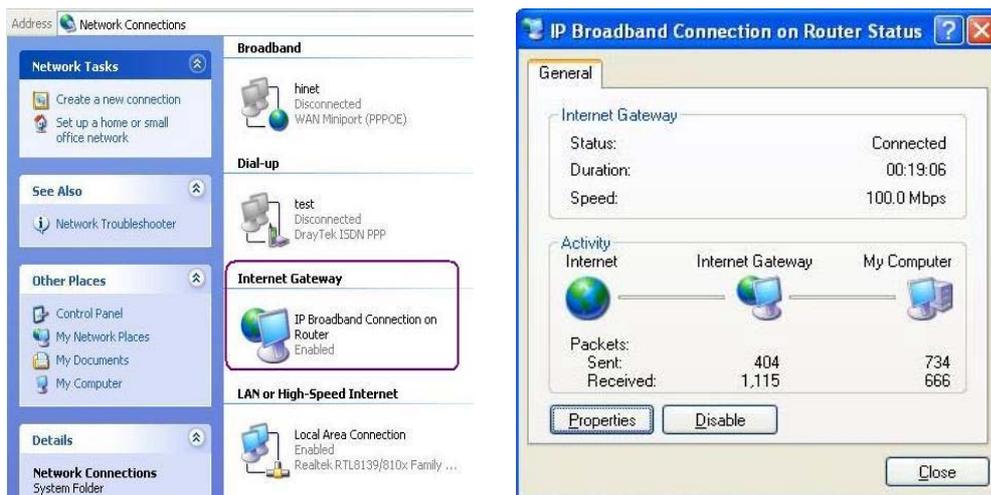
The **UPnP** (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router. It is more reliable than requiring a router to work out by itself which ports need to be opened. Further, the user does not have to manually set up port mappings or a DMZ. **UPnP is available on Windows XP** and the router provides the associated support for MSN Messenger to allow full use of the voice, video and messaging features.

#### Applications >> UPnP

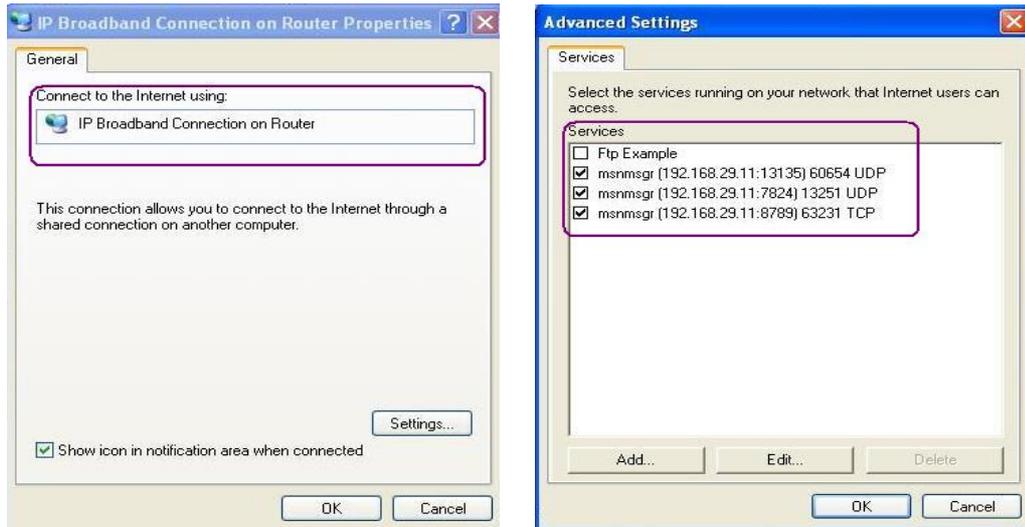


**Enable UPnP Service** Accordingly, you can enable either the **Connection Control Service** or **Connection Status Service**.

After setting **Enable UPnP Service** setting, an icon of **IP Broadband Connection on Router** on Windows XP/Network Connections will appear. The connection status and control status will be able to be activated. The NAT Traversal of UPnP enables the multimedia features of your applications to operate. This has to manually set up port mappings or use other similar methods. The screenshots below show examples of this facility.



The UPnP facility on the router enables UPnP aware applications such as MSN Messenger to discover what are behind a NAT router. The application will also learn the external IP address and configure port mappings on the router. Subsequently, such a facility forwards packets from the external ports of the router to the internal ports used by the application.



The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP

**Can't work with Firewall Software**

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

**Security Considerations**

Activating the UPnP function on your network may incur some security threats. You should consider carefully these risks before activating the UPnP function.

- Some Microsoft operating systems have found out the UPnP weaknesses and hence you need to ensure that you have applied the latest service packs and patches.
- Non-privileged users can control some router functions, including removing and adding port mappings.

The UPnP function dynamically adds port mappings on behalf of some UPnP-aware applications. When the applications terminate abnormally, these mappings may not be removed.

**3.8.5 Wake on LAN**

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as “Enable” on the BIOS setting.

Application >> Wake on LAN

Wake on LAN

**Note:** Wake on LAN cooperate with **Bind IP to MAC** function, only binded PCs can wake up through IP.

Wake by:

IP Address:

MAC Address:  :  :  :  :  :

**Result**

**Wake by**

Two types provide for you to wake up the binded IP. If you choose Wake by MAC Address, you have to type the correct MAC address of the host in MAC Address boxes. If you choose Wake by IP Address, you have to choose the correct IP address.

Wake by:

**IP Address**

The IP addresses that have been configured in **Firewall>>Bind IP to MAC** will be shown in this drop down list. Choose the IP address from the drop down list that you want to wake up.

**MAC Address**

Type any one of the MAC address of the binded PCs.

**Wake Up**

Click this button to wake up the selected IP. See the following figure. The result will be shown on the box.

Application >> Wake on LAN

Wake on LAN

**Note:** Wake on LAN cooperate with **Bind IP to MAC** function, only binded PCs can wake up through IP.

Wake by:

IP Address:

MAC Address:  :  :  :  :  :

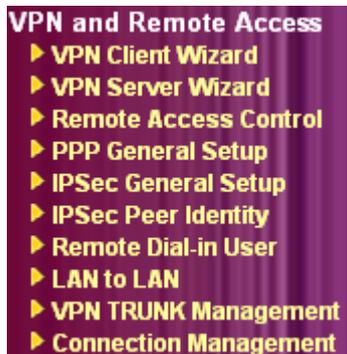
**Result**

Send command to client done.

## 3.9 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

Below shows the menu items for VPN and Remote Access.



**Note:** This feature can be applied for ISDN remote dial-in or ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection in *i* series models.

### 3.9.1 VPN Client Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN client. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial out connection (from server to client) step by step.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

#### Choose VPN Establishment Environment

LAN-to-LAN VPN Client Mode Selection:

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile:

**Note:** For a typical LAN-to-LAN tunnel, please select Route Mode.  
If the remote network is expecting only a single client or ip and is not configured to route the subnet and then select NAT mode.  
If in doubt then select Route Mode

#### LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection

Choose the client mode.

Route Mode/NAT Mode – If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose this mode, otherwise please choose Route Mode.

Route Mode ▾  
 Route Mode  
 NAT Mode

**Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile**

There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set.

[Index]	[Status]	[Name]
1	x	???
2	x	???
3	x	???
4	x	???
5	x	???
6	x	???
7	x	???
8	x	???
9	x	???
10	x	???
11	x	???
12	x	???
13	x	???
14	x	???
15	x	???
16	x	???
17	x	???
18	x	???
19	x	???
20	x	???
21	x	???
22	x	???
23	x	???
24	x	???
25	x	???
26	x	???
27	x	???
28	x	???
29	x	???

When you finish the mode and profile selection, please click **Next** to open the following page.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

VPN Connection Setting

Security ranking (1 is the highest; 5 is the lowest)

1. L2TP over IPSec
2. IPSec
3. PPTP (Encryption)
4. L2TP
5. PPTP (None Encryption)

Throughput ranking (1 is the highest; 5 is the lowest)

1. PPTP (None Encryption)
2. L2TP
3. IPSec
4. L2TP over IPSec
5. PPTP (Encryption)

Select VPN Type:

- PPTP (None Encryption)
- PPTP (Encryption)
- IPSec
- L2TP
- L2TP over IPSec (Nice to Have)
- L2TP over IPSec (Must)

< Back    Next >    Finish    Cancel

In this page, you have to select suitable VPN type for the VPN client profile. There are six types provided here. Different type will lead to different configuration page. After making

the choices for the client profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection(s) you made.

- When you choose **PPTP (None Encryption)** or **PPTP (Encryption)**, you will see the following graphic:

[VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard](#)

#### VPN Client PPTP None Encryption Settings

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	draytek.com
Username	marketing
Password	●●●●●●●●
Remote Network IP	192.168.1.6
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

[< Back](#) [Next >](#) [Finish](#) [Cancel](#)

- When you choose **IPSec**, you will see the following graphic:

[VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard](#)

#### VPN Client IPSec Settings

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
IKE Authentication Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Local Certificate	None
IPSec Security Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium (AH)	
<input type="radio"/> High (ESP)	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

[< Back](#) [Next >](#) [Finish](#) [Cancel](#)

- When you choose **L2TP**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

**VPN Client L2TP Settings**

Profile Name	VPN-1
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	draytek.com
Username	marketing
Password	●●●●●●●●
Remote Network IP	192.168.1.6
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

< Back    Next >    Finish    Cancel

- When you choose **L2TP over IPSec (Nice to Have/Must)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard

**VPN Client L2TP over IPSec (Nice to Have) Settings**

Profile Name	???
VPN Dial-Out Through	WAN1 First
<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN (e.g. 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	
IKE Authentication Method	
<input type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Local ID	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First	
<input type="radio"/> Subject Name First	
Local Certificate	None
IPSec Security Method	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium (AH)	
<input type="radio"/> High (ESP)	DES without Authentication
Username	???
Password	
Remote Network IP	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0

< Back    Next >    Finish    Cancel

<b>Profile Name</b>	Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters.
<b>VPN Dial-Out Through</b>	Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.  <b>WAN1 First / WAN2 First</b> / - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1/WAN2 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.  <b>WAN1 Only / WAN2 Only</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN1/WAN2 as the only channel for VPN connection.
<b>Always On</b>	Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.
<b>Pre-Shared Key</b>	<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN to LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPSec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPSec and IPSec tunnel.  <b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Specify a key for IKE authentication.  <b>Confirm Pre-Shared Key</b> -Confirm the pre-shared key.
<b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b>	Click <b>Digital Signature</b> to invoke this function. Use the drop down list to choose one of the certificates for using. You have to configure one certificate at least previously in <b>Certificate Management &gt;&gt; Local Certificate</b> . Otherwise, the setting you choose here will not be effective.  <b>Peer ID</b> – Choose the one you want.  <b>Local ID</b> – Choose <b>Alternative Subject Name First</b> or <b>Subject Name First</b> .  <b>Local Certificate</b> – Choose one of the local certificates defined in <b>Certificate Management &gt;&gt; Local Certificate</b> .
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	<b>Medium</b> - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.  <b>High</b> - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
<b>User Name</b>	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
<b>Password</b>	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
<b>Remote Network IP</b>	Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN

connection.

**Remote Network Mask** Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.

After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

**VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Client Wizard**

**Please confirm your settings**

LAN-to-LAN Index:	27
Profile Name:	test
VPN Connection Type:	PPTP (None Encryption)
VPN Dial-Out Through:	WAN1 First
Always on:	No
Server IP/Host Name:	192.168.1.87
Remote Network IP:	172.16.3.99
Remote Network Mask:	255.255.255.0

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

- Go to the VPN Connection Management.
- Do another VPN Client Wizard setup.
- View more detailed configurations.

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

**Go to the VPN Connection Management** Click this radio button to access **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** for viewing VPN Connection status.

**Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup** Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard.

**View more detailed configuration** Click this radio button to access **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN** for viewing detailed configuration.

### 3.9.2 VPN Server Wizard

Such wizard is used to configure VPN settings for VPN server. Such wizard will guide to set the LAN-to-LAN profile for VPN dial in connection (from client to server) step by step.

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Server Wizard

#### Choose VPN Establishment Environment

VPN Server Mode Selection: Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN) [v]

Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile: [Index] [Status] [Name] [v]

Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts: [Index] [Status] [Name] [v]

Allowed Dial-in Type:

PPTP

IPsec

L2TP with IPsec Policy None [v]

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

#### VPN Server Mode Selection

Choose the direction for the VPN server.

**Site to Site VPN/Remote Dial-in User** – To set a LAN-to-LAN profile automatically, please choose Site to Site VPN.

**Remote Dial-in User** – You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via VPN connection.

Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN) [v]

Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)

Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker)

#### Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile

This item is available when you choose **Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)** as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN profiles for users to set.

[Index]	[Status]	[Name]
1	x	???
2	x	???
3	x	???
4	x	???
5	x	???
6	x	???
7	x	???
8	x	???
9	x	???
10	x	???
11	x	???
12	x	???
13	x	???
14	x	???
15	x	???
16	x	???
17	x	???
18	x	???
19	x	???
20	x	???
21	x	???
22	x	???
23	x	???
24	x	???
25	x	???
26	x	???
27	x	???
28	x	???
29	x	???

**Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts**

This item is available when you choose Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker) as VPN server mode. There are 32 VPN tunnels for users to set.

**Allowed Dial-in Type**

This item is available after you choose any one of dial-in user account profiles. Next, you have to select suitable dial-in type for the VPN server profile. There are several types provided here (similar to VPN Client Wizard).

- PPTP
  - IPsec
  - L2TP with IPsec Policy
- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| None         | ▼ |
| None         |   |
| Nice to Have |   |
| Must         |   |

Different Dial-in Type will lead to different configuration page. In addition, adjustable items for each dial-in type will be changed according to the VPN Server Mode (**Site to Site VPN** and **Remote Dial-in User**) selected.

After making the choices for the server profile, please click **Next**. You will see different configurations based on the selection you made. Here we take the example of choosing **Remote-Dial-in User** as the **VPN Server Mode**.

- When you check **PPTP/L2TP with IPSec Policy (None)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Server Wizard

**VPN Authentication Setting**

PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPSec Authentication	
Username	???
Password	
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

- When you check **PPTP/IPSec/L2TP** (three types) or **PPTP/IPSec** (two types) or **L2TP with IPSec Policy (Nice to Have/Must)**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Server Wizard

**VPN Authentication Setting**

PPTP / L2TP / L2TP over IPSec Authentication	
Username	server1
Password	
IPSec / L2TP over IPSec Authentication	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)	
Peer ID	None
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	192.168.1.99
Peer ID	

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

- When you check **IPSec**, you will see the following graphic:

VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Server Wizard

**VPN Authentication Setting**

IPSec / L2TP over IPSec Authentication

Pre-Shared Key

Confirm Pre-Shared Key

Digital Signature (X.509)

Peer ID

Peer IP/VPN Client IP

Peer ID

< Back    Next >    Finish    Cancel

<b>Profile Name</b>	Type a name for such profile. The length of the file is limited to 10 characters.
<b>User Name</b>	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
<b>Password</b>	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
<b>Pre-Shared Key</b>	For IPSec/L2TP IPSec authentication, you have to type a pre-shared key.
<b>Confirm Pre-Shared Key</b>	Type the pre-shared key again for confirmation.
<b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b>	Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function.  Use the drop down list to choose one of the certificates for using. You have to configure one certificate at least previously in <b>Certificate Management &gt;&gt; Local Certificate</b> . Otherwise, the setting you choose here will not be effective.
<b>Peer IP/VPN Client IP</b>	Type the WAN IP address or VPN client IP address for the remote client.
<b>Peer ID</b>	Type the ID name for the remote client.
<b>Remote Network IP</b>	Please type one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
<b>Remote Network Mask</b>	Please type the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.

After finishing the configuration, please click **Next**. The confirmation page will be shown as follows. If there is no problem, you can click one of the radio buttons listed on the page and click **Finish** to execute the next action.

**VPN and Remote Access >> VPN Server Wizard**

**Please Confirm Your Settings**

VPN Environment:	Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)
Index:	3
Profile Name:	VPN-Ser1
Username:	server1
Allowed Service:	PPTP+IPSec
Peer IP/VPN Client IP:	
Peer ID:	
Remote Network IP:	0.0.0.0
Remote Network Mask:	255.255.255.0

Click **Back** to modify changes if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save the current settings and proceed to the following action:

- Go to the VPN Connection Management.
- Do another VPN Server Wizard setup.
- View more detailed configurations.

- Go to the VPN Connection Management**      Click this radio button to access **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** for viewing VPN Connection status.
- Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup**      Click this radio button to set another profile of VPN Server through VPN Server Wizard.
- View more detailed configuration**      Click this radio button to access **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN** for viewing detailed configuration.

### 3.9.3 Remote Access Control

Enable the necessary VPN service as you need. If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port.

**VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Access Control Setup**

**Remote Access Control Setup**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable PPTP VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable IPSec VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable L2TP VPN Service
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable SSL VPN Service
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable ISDN Dial-In

**Note:** If you intend running a VPN server inside your LAN, you should uncheck the appropriate protocol above to allow pass-through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings.

The Vigor router will not accept the ISDN dial-in connection if the box of **Enable ISDN Dial-in** is not checked.

### 3.9.4 PPP General Setup

This submenu only applies to PPP-related VPN connections, such as PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec.

VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

#### Dial-In PPP Authentication PAP Only

Select this option to force the router to authenticate dial-in users with the PAP protocol.

#### PAP or CHAP

Selecting this option means the router will attempt to authenticate dial-in users with the CHAP protocol first. If the dial-in user does not support this protocol, it will fall back to use the PAP protocol for authentication.

#### Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE Optional MPPE)

This option represents that the MPPE encryption method will be optionally employed in the router for the remote dial-in user. If the remote dial-in user does not support the MPPE encryption algorithm, the router will transmit “no MPPE encrypted packets”. Otherwise, the MPPE encryption scheme will be used to encrypt the data.

**Require MPPE (40/128bits)** - Selecting this option will force the router to encrypt packets by using the MPPE encryption algorithm. In addition, the remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data.

**Maximum MPPE** - This option indicates that the router will use the MPPE encryption scheme with maximum bits (128-bit) to encrypt the data.

#### Mutual Authentication (PAP)

The Mutual Authentication function is mainly used to communicate with other routers or clients who need bi-directional authentication in order to provide stronger security, for example, Cisco routers. So you should enable this function when your peer router requires mutual authentication. You should further specify the **User Name** and **Password** of the mutual authentication peer.

### Start IP Address

Enter a start IP address for the dial-in PPP connection. You should choose an IP address from the local private network. For example, if the local private network is 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0, you could choose 192.168.1.200 as the Start IP Address. But, you have to notice that the first two IP addresses of 192.168.1.200 and 192.168.1.201 are reserved for ISDN remote dial-in user.

## 3.9.5 IPSec General Setup

In **IPSec General Setup**, there are two major parts of configuration.

There are two phases of IPSec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPSec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPSec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPSec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

Authentication Header (AH) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.

### VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

#### VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	
Certificate for Dial-in	None
<b>Pre-Shared Key</b>	
Pre-Shared Key	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)	Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> High (ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
Data will be encrypted and authentic.	

OK

Cancel

### IKE Authentication

This usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node

**Method** (LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPSec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPSec and IPSec tunnel.

**Certificate for Dial-in** – Choose the one you need.

**Pre-Shared Key** -Currently only support Pre-Shared Key authentication.

**Pre-Shared Key**- Specify a key for IKE authentication

**Confirm Pre-Shared Key**- Retype the characters to confirm the pre-shared key.

**IPSec Security Method**

**Medium** - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.

**High** - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.

### 3.9.6 IPSec Peer Identity

To use digital certificate for peer authentication in either LAN-to-LAN connection or Remote User Dial-In connection, here you may edit a table of peer certificate for selection. As shown below, the router provides **100** entries of digital certificates for peer dial-in users.

[VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec Peer Identity](#)

X509 Peer ID Accounts: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Status	Index	Name	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	×
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	×	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	×

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-100](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Set to Factory Default** Click it to clear all indexes.

**Index** Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of IPSec Peer Identity.

**Name** Display the profile name of that index.

Click each index to edit one peer digital certificate. There are three security levels of digital signature authentication: Fill each necessary field to authenticate the remote peer. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Profile Index : 1

<b>Profile Name</b>	<input type="text" value="one"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account	
<hr/>	
<input type="radio"/> <b>Accept Any Peer ID</b>	
<hr/>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Accept Subject Alternative Name</b>	
Type	<input type="text" value="IP Address"/>
IP	<input type="text"/>
<hr/>	
<input type="radio"/> <b>Accept Subject Name</b>	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>

- Profile Name**                      Type in a name in this file.
- Accept Any Peer ID**            Click to accept any peer regardless of its identity.
- Accept Subject Alternative Name**    Click to check one specific field of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field can be **IP Address**, **Domain**, or **E-mail Address**. The box under the Type will appear according to the type you select and ask you to fill in corresponding setting.
- Accept Subject Name**                Click to check the specific fields of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field includes **Country (C)**, **State (ST)**, **Location (L)**, **Organization (O)**, **Organization Unit (OU)**, **Common Name (CN)**, and **Email (E)**.

### 3.9.7 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via ISDN or build the VPN connection. You may set parameters including specified connection peer ID, connection type (ISDN Dial-In connection, VPN connection - including PPTP, IPSec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPSec), corresponding security methods, and etc.

The router provides **100** access accounts for dial-in users. Besides, you can extend the user accounts to the RADIUS server through the built-in RADIUS client function. The following figure shows the summary table.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Remote Access User Accounts:			<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>		
Index	User	Status	Index	User	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	X

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-100](#) >> [Next](#) >>

#### Set to Factory Default

Click to clear all indexes.

#### Index

Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of Remote Dial-in User.

#### User

Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.

#### Status

Display the access state of the specific dial-in user. The symbol V and X represent the specific dial-in user to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile. **Each Dial-In Type requires you to fill the different corresponding fields on the right.** If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

**Index No. 1**

<p><b>User account and Authentication</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account</p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)</p>		<p>Username <input style="width: 100px;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input style="width: 100px;" type="password"/></p>
<p><b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="None"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Tunnel</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node</p> <p>Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block</p> <p>Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP, IP-Camera, DHCP Relay..etc.)</p> <p><b>SSL VPN</b></p> <p><a href="#">Set SSL Web Proxy</a></p>		<p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords(mOTP)</p> <p>PIN Code <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p>Secret <input style="width: 100px;" type="password"/></p> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)</p> <p><input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="None"/></p> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)</p> <p>High (ESP)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p> <p>Local ID <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/> (optional)</p> <p><b>Callback Function</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback function</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify the callback number</p> <p>Callback Number <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback Budget Control</p> <p>Callback Budget <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s)</p>

**Enable this account**

Check the box to enable this function.

**ISDN**

**Idle Timeout-** If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.

Allow the remote ISDN dial-in connection. You can further set up Callback function below. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below. This feature is for S model only.

**PPTP**

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.

**IPsec Tunnel**

Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.

**L2TP**

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:

**None** - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.

**Nice to Have** - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection

becomes one pure L2TP connection.

**Must** -Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.

## SSL Tunnel

It allows the remote dial-in user to make an SSL VPN Tunnel connection through Internet, suitable for the application through network accessing (e.g., PPTP/L2TP/IPSec)

If you check this box, the function of SSL Tunnel for this account will be activated immediately.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 2

**User account and Authentication**

Enable this account  
Idle Timeout: 300 second(s)

**Allowed Dial-in Type**

ISDN  
 PPTP  
 IPSec Tunnel  
 L2TP with IPSec Policy: None  
 **SSL Tunnel** → **SSL Tunnel**  
 Specify Remote Node  
Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number: \_\_\_\_\_

**IKE Authentication Method**

Pre-Shared Key  
IKE Pre-Shared Key: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Digital Signature (X.509)  
None

**IPSec Security Method**

Medium (AH)  
High (ESP)  
 DES  3DES  AES

To check if SSL Tunnel is activated or not, please open Draytek SSL VPN portal interface. From the web page, you will see the message to indicate the SSL Tunnel is activated.

DrayTek

Provide SSL VPN

Home **SSL Tunnel** [logout]

INFO

- SSL Tunnel
- Click "Connect" to establish an SSL Tunnel to the remote network!

Use SSL Tunnel:

Warning: Keep your browser open to maintain the connection. If you reload your browser, Vigor SSL Tunnel will disconnect.

Change default route to the remote gateway

Connect

## Specify Remote Node

**Check the checkbox**-You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user, ISDN number or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode).

**Uncheck the checkbox**-This means the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the **general settings**.

## Netbios Naming Packet

**Pass** – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.

**Block** – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.

## Multicast via VPN

Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.

**Pass** – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through

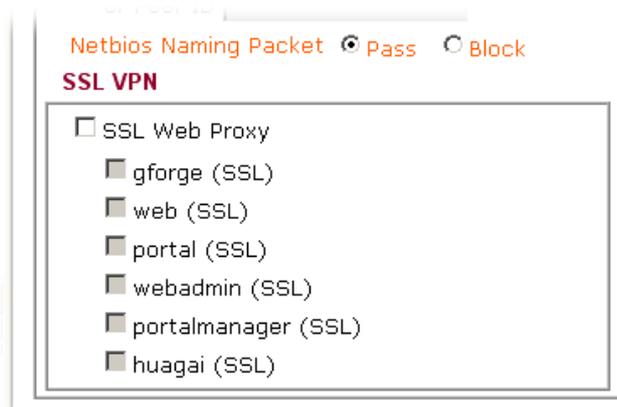
the router.

**Block** – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.

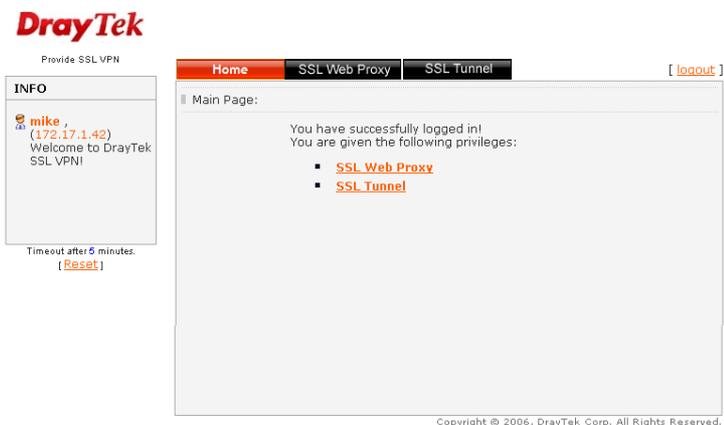
## SSL VPN

**Set SSL Web Proxy** - It allows the remote dial-in user to access internal web over SSL VPN, suitable for the application through web only (e.g., HTTP). Click **SSL VPN>> SSL Web Proxy** to set profiles.

If you have set several profiles beforehand, you can check SSL Web Proxy and choose the one(s) you need as SSL VPN.



To check if SSL Web Proxy is activated or not, please open Draytek SSL VPN portal interface. From the web page, you will see the message to indicate that you have the privilege for the SSL Web Proxy.



If you haven't set any SSL VPN web proxy profiles, you will a link here. Click this link to access into the configuration page of SSL VPN.

**Note:** SSL VPN can be applied in browser (e.g., IE) which supports ActivateX only.

### User Name

This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.

### Password

This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.

### Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP)

Check this box to make the authentication with mOTP function.

**PIN Code** – Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234).

**Secret** – Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).

### **IKE Authentication Method**

This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.

**Pre-Shared Key** - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.

**Digital Signature (X.509)** – Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the **VPN and Remote Access >>IPSec Peer Identity**.

### **IPSec Security Method**

This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method. **Medium - Authentication Header (AH)** means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.

**High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)** means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.

**Local ID** - Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.

### **Callback Function**

The callback function provides a callback service only for the ISDN dial-in user (for *i* model only). The remote user will be charged the connection fee by the telecom.

**Check to enable Callback function**-Enables the callback function.

**Specify the callback number**-The option is for extra security. Once enabled, the router will ONLY call back to the specified Callback Number.

**Check to enable callback budget control**-By default, the callback function has a time restriction. Once the callback budget has been exhausted, the callback mechanism will be disabled automatically.

**Callback Budget (Unit: minutes)**- Specify the time budget for the dial-in user. The budget will be decreased automatically per callback connection.

### 3.9.8 LAN to LAN

Here you can manage LAN-to-LAN connections by maintaining a table of connection profiles. You may set parameters including specified connection direction (dial-in or dial-out), connection peer ID, connection type (ISDN connection, VPN connection - including PPTP, IPsec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPsec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router provides up to **100** profiles, which also means supporting **100** VPN tunnels simultaneously. The following figure shows the summary table.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

LAN-to-LAN Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Name	Status	Index	Name	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	X

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-100](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Set to Factory Default**

Click to clear all indexes.

**Name**

Indicate the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.

**Status**

Indicate the status of individual profiles. The symbol V and X represent the profile to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit each profile and you will get the following page. Each LAN-to-LAN profile includes 4 subgroups. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanations will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

For the web page is too long, we divide the page into several sections for explanation.

Profile Index : 1

1. Common Settings

Profile Name <input type="text" value="test"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile	Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-In <input type="checkbox"/> Always on Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s) <input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP <input type="text"/>
VPN Dial-Out Through: <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/> Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)	

2. Dial-Out Settings

<p><b>Type of Server I am calling</b></p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> ISDN <input type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/>	Link Type <input type="text" value="64k bps"/> Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="text"/> PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off
Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) <input type="text"/>	<p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) Peer ID <input type="text" value="None"/> Local ID <input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First <input type="radio"/> Subject Name First Local Certificate <input type="text" value="None"/>
	<p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <input type="text" value="DES without Authentication"/> <input type="button" value="Advanced"/>
	Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup: <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>
	<p><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b></p> <input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback <input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote

**Profile Name**

Specify a name for the profile of the LAN-to-LAN connection.

**Enable this profile**

Check here to activate this profile.

**VPN Connection Through**

Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.

VPN Connection Through:

WAN1 First

WAN1 Only

WAN2 First

WAN2 Only

**WAN1 First** - While connecting, the router will use WAN1 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1 fails, the

router will use another WAN interface instead.

**WAN1 Only** - While connecting, the router will use WAN1 as the only channel for VPN connection.

**WAN2 First** - While connecting, the router will use WAN2 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN2 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.

**WAN2 Only** - While connecting, the router will use WAN2 as the only channel for VPN connection.

#### **Netbios Naming Packet**

**Pass** – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.

**Block** – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.

#### **Multicast via VPN**

Some programs might send multicast packets via VPN connection.

**Pass** – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router.

**Block** – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.

#### **Call Direction**

Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile.

**Both**:-initiator/responder

**Dial-Out**- initiator only

**Dial-In**- responder only.

#### **Always On or Idle Timeout**

**Always On**-Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.

**Idle Timeout**: The default value is 300 seconds. If the connection has been idled over the value, the router will drop the connection.

#### **Enable PING to keep alive**

This function is to help the router to determine the status of IPSec VPN connection, especially useful in the case of abnormal VPN IPSec tunnel disruption. For details, please refer to the note below. Check to enable the transmission of PING packets to a specified IP address.

#### **PING to the IP**

Enter the IP address of the remote host that located at the other-end of the VPN tunnel.

**Enable PING to Keep Alive** is used to handle abnormal IPSec VPN connection disruption. It will help to provide the state of a VPN connection for router's judgment of redial.

Normally, if any one of VPN peers wants to disconnect the connection, it should follow a serial of packet exchange procedure to inform each other. However, if the remote peer disconnect without notice, Vigor router will by no where to know this situation. To resolve this dilemma, by continuously

sending PING packets to the remote host, the Vigor router can know the true existence of this VPN connection and react accordingly. This is independent of DPD (dead peer detection).

<b>ISDN</b>	Build ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection to remote network. You should set up Link Type and identity like User Name and Password for the authentication of remote server. You can further set up Callback (CBCP) function below. This feature is useful for S model only.
<b>PPTP</b>	Build a PPTP VPN connection to the server through the Internet. You should set the identity like User Name and Password below for the authentication of remote server.
<b>IPSec Tunnel</b>	Build an IPSec VPN connection to the server through Internet.
<b>L2TP with ...</b>	Build a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below: <b>None:</b> Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. <b>Nice to Have:</b> Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-out VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. <b>Must:</b> Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.
<b>User Name</b>	This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
<b>Password</b>	This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
<b>PPP Authentication</b>	This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. PAP/CHAP is the most common selection due to wild compatibility.
<b>VJ compression</b>	This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally set to <b>Yes</b> to improve bandwidth utilization.
<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy. <b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Input 1-63 characters as pre-shared key. <b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> - Select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPSec Peer Identity</b> .
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy.
<b>Medium</b>	<b>Authentication Header (AH)</b> means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. <b>High (ESP-Encapsulating Security Payload)-</b> means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. Select

from below:

**DES without Authentication** -Use DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

**DES with Authentication**-Use DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

**3DES without Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

**3DES with Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

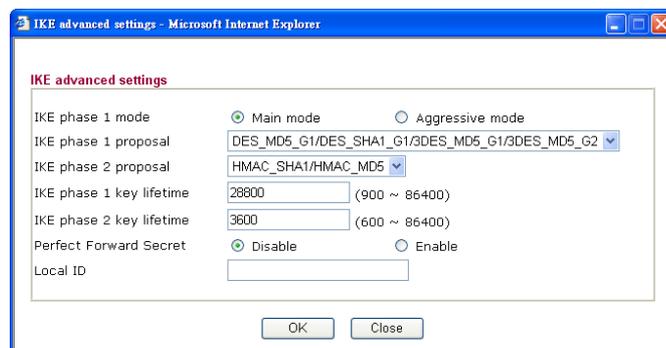
**AES without Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

**AES with Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

## Advanced

Specify mode, proposal and key life of each IKE phase, Gateway etc.

The window of advance setup is shown as below:



**IKE phase 1 mode** -Select from **Main** mode and **Aggressive** mode. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main** mode is more secure than **Aggressive** mode since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPSec session. However, the **Aggressive** mode is faster. The default value in Vigor router is Main mode.

**IKE phase 1 proposal**-To propose the local available authentication schemes and encryption algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Two combinations are available for Aggressive mode and nine for **Main** mode. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most schemes.

**IKE phase 2 proposal**-To propose the local available algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Three combinations are available for both modes. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most algorithms.

**IKE phase 1 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds.

**IKE phase 2 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds.

You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds.

**Perfect Forward Secret (PFS)**-The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function.

**Local ID**-In **Aggressive** mode, Local ID is on behalf of the IP address while identity authenticating with remote VPN server. The length of the ID is limited to 47 characters.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup**

You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Application – Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

**Callback Function (for S models only)**

The callback function provides a callback service as a part of PPP suite only for the ISDN dial-in user. The router owner will be charged the connection fee by the telecom.

**Require Remote to Callback**-Enable this to let the router to require the remote peer to callback for the connection afterwards.

**Provide ISDN Number to Remote**-In the case that the remote peer requires the Vigor router to callback, the local ISDN number will be provided to the remote peer. Check here to allow the Vigor router to send the ISDN number to the remote router. This feature is useful for *i* model only.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

<p><b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">None</span></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway</p> <p>Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP</p> <p><input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>or Peer ID <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p>	<p>Username <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input style="width: 100%;" type="password"/></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <hr/> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">IKE Pre-Shared Key <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Peer ID <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">None</span></p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Local ID</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input checked="" type="radio"/> Alternative Subject Name First</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input type="radio"/> Subject Name First</p> <hr/> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)</p> <p>High (ESP)</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES</p> <hr/> <p><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback</p> <p>Callback Number <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/></p> <p>Callback Budget <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)</p>
--	---

### 4. GRE over IPsec Settings

<input type="checkbox"/> Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec
<input type="checkbox"/> Logical Traffic      My GRE IP <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/> Peer GRE IP <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/>

### 5. TCP/IP Network Settings

<p>My WAN IP <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Gateway IP <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network IP <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/></p> <p>Remote Network Mask <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p>Local Network IP <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/></p> <p>Local Network Mask <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="More"/></p>	<p>RIP Direction <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Disable</span></p> <p>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Route</span></p> <hr/> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )</p>
--	--

#### Allowed Dial-In Type

Determine the dial-in connection with different types.

#### ISDN

Allow the remote ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below. This feature is useful for S model only. In addition, you can further set up Callback function below.

#### PPTP

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.

#### IPsec Tunnel

Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.

#### L2TP

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP

alone or with IPsec. Select from below:

**None** - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.

**Nice to Have** - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.

**Must** - Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.

**Specify CLID or Remote VPN Gateway**

You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box. Enter Peer ISDN number if you select ISDN above (This feature is useful for *i* model only.). Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side.

If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.

**User Name**

This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.

**Password**

This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.

**VJ Compression**

VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above.

**IKE Authentication Method**

This group of fields is applicable for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPsec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.

**Pre-Shared Key** - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.

**Digital Signature (X.509)** - Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and select one predefined Profiles set in the **VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity**.

**IPsec Security Method**

This group of fields is a must for IPsec Tunnels and L2TP with IPsec Policy when you specify the remote node.

**Medium-** Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.

**High-** Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.

**Callback Function**

The callback function provides a callback service only for the ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection (this feature is useful for S

model only). The remote user will be charged the connection fee by the telecom.

**Check to enable Callback function**-Enables the callback function.

**Callback number**-The option is for extra security. Once enabled, the router will ONLY call back to the specified Callback Number.

**Callback budget**- By default, the callback function has limitation of callback period. Once the callback budget is exhausted, the function will be disabled automatically.

**Callback Budget (Unit: minutes)**- Specify the time budget for the dial-in user. The budget will be decreased automatically per callback connection. The default value 0 means no limitation of callback period.

**GRE over IPSec Settings** **Enable IPSec Dial-Out function GRE over IPSec** - Check this box to verify data and transmit data in encryption with GRE over IPSec packet after configuring IPSec Dial-Out setting. Both ends must match for each other by setting same virtual IP address for communication.

**Logical Traffic** - Such technique comes from RFC2890. Define logical traffic for data transmission between both sides of VPN tunnel by using the characteristic of GRE. Even hacker can decipher IPSec encryption, he/she still cannot ask LAN site to do data transmission with any information. Such function can ensure the data transmitted on VPN tunnel is really sent out from both sides. This is an optional function. However, if one side wants to use it, the peer must enable it, too.

**TCP/IP Network Settings** **My WAN IP** - This field is only applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP.

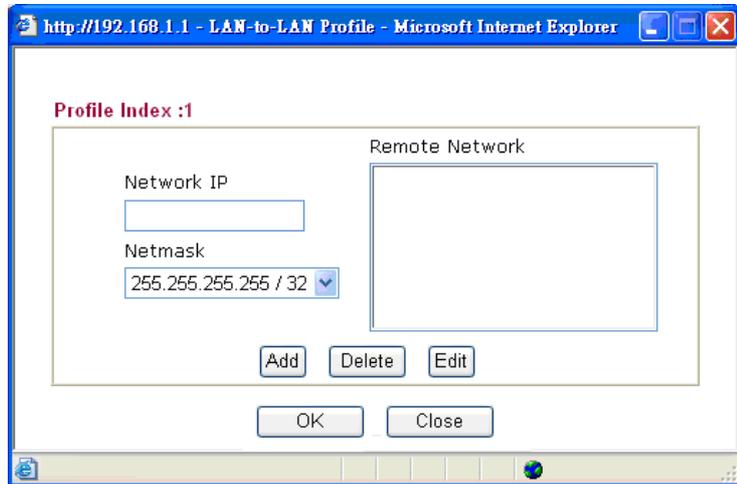
**Remote Gateway IP** - This field is only applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP.

**Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask** - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPSec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.

**Local Network IP / Local Network Mask** – Type the local network IP and mask for TCP / IP configuration. You can

modify the settings if required.

**More** - Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.



**RIP Direction** - The option specifies the direction of RIP (Routing Information Protocol) packets. You can enable/disable one of direction here. Herein, we provide four options: TX/RX Both, TX Only, RX Only, and Disable.

**From first subnet to remote network, you have to do -**  
If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose **NAT**, otherwise choose **Route**.

**Change default route to this VPN tunnel** - Check this box to change the default route with this VPN tunnel. Be aware that this setting is available only for one WAN interface is enabled. It is not available when both WAN interfaces are enabled. You have to disable one WAN interface (WAN 1 or WAN 2) on **WAN >> General Setup** for enabling such setting.

### 3.9.9 VPN TRUNK Management

VPN trunk includes four features - VPN Backup, VPN load balance, GRE over IPSec, and Binding tunnel policy.

#### Features of VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup Mechanism

VPN TRUNK Management is a backup mechanism which can set multiple VPN tunnels as backup tunnel. It can assure the network connection not to be cut off due to network environment blocked by any reason.

- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism can judge abnormal situation for the environment of VPN server and correct it to complete the backup of VPN Tunnel in real-time.
- VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism is compliant with all WAN modes (single/multi)
- Dial-out connection types contain IPSec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec and ISDN (depends on hardware specification)

- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- Fully compliant with VPN Server LAN Sit Single/Multi Network
- Mail Alert support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Syslog support, please refer to **System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert** for detailed configuration
- Specific ERD (Environment Recovery Detection) mechanism which can be operated by using Telnet command

VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile will be activated when initial connection of single VPN tunnel is off-line. Before setting VPN TRUNK -VPN Backup mechanism backup profile, please configure at least two sets of LAN-to-LAN profiles (with fully configured dial-out settings) first, otherwise you will not have selections for grouping Member1 and Member2.

### **Features of VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance Mechanism**

VPN Load Balance Mechanism can set multiple VPN tunnels for using as traffic load balance tunnel. It can assist users to do effective load sharing for multiple VPN tunnels according to real line bandwidth. Moreover, it offers three types of algorithms for load balancing and binding tunnel policy mechanism to let the administrator manage the network more flexibly.

- Three types of load sharing algorithm offered, Round Robin, Weighted Round Robin and Fastest
- Binding Tunnel Policy mechanism allows users to encrypt the data in transmission or specified service function in transmission and define specified VPN Tunnel for having effective bandwidth management.
- Dial-out connection types contain IPSec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec and GRE over IPSec
- The web page is simple to understand and easy to configure
- The TCP Session transmitted by using VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism will not be lost due to one of VPN Tunnels disconnected. Users do not need to reconnect with setting TCP/UDP Service Port again. The VPN Load Balance function can keep the transmission for internal data on tunnel stably.

**Backup profile list** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

**Note:** [Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disable or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

No.	Status	Name	Member1(Active)Type	Member2(Active)Type

Advanced

**Load Balance Profile List** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

**Note:** [Active:NO] The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disable or under Dial-In(Call Direction) at present.

No.	Status	Name	Member1(Active)Type	Member2(Active)Type

Advanced

**General Setup**

Status  Enable  Disable

Profile Name

Member1

Member2

Attribute Mode  Backup  Load Balance

**Backup Profile List**

**Set to Factory Default** - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.

**No** – The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.

**Status (on Backup Profile field)** - “v” means such profile is enabled; “x” means such profile is disabled.

**Name (on Backup Profile field)** - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup mechanism profile.

**Member1 (on Backup Profile field)** - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.

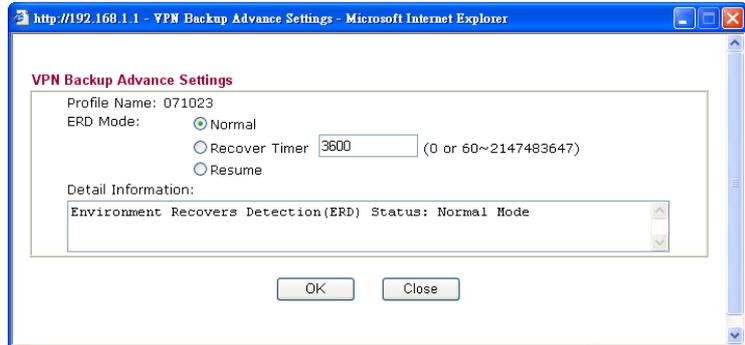
**Active (on Backup Profile field)** - “Yes” means normal condition. ”No” means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.

**Type (on Backup Profile field)** - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPSec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec (NICE), L2TP over IPSec(MUST) and so on.

**Member2 (on Backup Profile field)** - Display the dial-out

profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.

**Advanced** – This button is only available when there is one profile (or more) created in this page.



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup.**

**Load Balance Profile List** **Set to Factory Default** - Click to clear all VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.  
**No** - The order of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

**Status** - “v” means such profile is enabled; ”x” means such profile is disabled.

**Name** - Display the name of VPN TRUNK-VPN Load Balance mechanism profile.

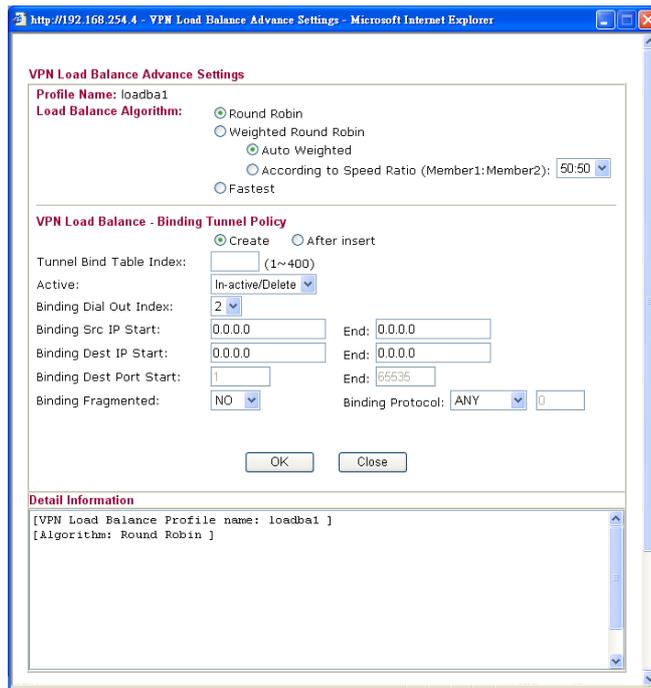
**Member1** - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member1 drop down list below.

**Active** - “Yes” means normal condition. ”No” means the state might be disabled or that profile currently is set with Dial-in mode (for call direction) in LAN-to-LAN.

**Type** - Display the connection type for that profile, such as IPSec, PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec (NICE), L2TP over IPSec(MUST) and so on.

**Member2** - Display the dial-out profile selected from the Member2 drop down list below.

**Advanced** – This button is only available when there is one or more profiles created in this page.



Detailed information for this dialog, see later section - **Advanced Load Balance and Backup.**

## General Setup

**Status-** After choosing one of the profile listed above, please click **Enable** to activate this profile. If you click **Disable**, the selected or current used VPN TRUNK-Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile will not have any effect for VPN tunnel.

**Profile Name-** Type a name for VPN TRUNK profile. Each profile can group two VPN connections set in LAN-to-LAN. The saved VPN profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be shown on Member1 and Member2 fields.

**Member 1/Member2** - Display the selection for LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles (configured in **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN-to-LAN**) for you to choose for grouping under certain VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile.

**No** - Index number of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.

**Name** - Profile name of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.

**Connection Type** - Connection type of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profile.

**VPN ServerIP (Private Network)** - VPN Server IP of LAN-to-LAN dial-out profiles.

**Attribute Mode** - Display available mode for you to choose. Choose **Backup** or **Load Balance** for your router.

## Add

Add and save new profile to the backup profile list. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in such new VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in red. VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance mechanism profile will be locked. The profiles in

LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in blue.

**Edit**

Click this button to save the changes to the **Status** (Enable or Disable), profile name, member1 or member2.

**Delete**

Click this button to delete the selected VPN TRUNK profile. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in the deleted VPN TRUNK profile will be released and that profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in black.

**Time for activating VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism profile**

VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism will be activated automatically after the initial connection of single VPN Tunnel off-line. The content in Member1/2 within VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism backup profile is similar to dial-out profile configured in LAN-to-LAN web page. VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup mechanism backup profile will process and handle everything unless it is off-line once it is activated.

**Time for activating VPN TRUNK – VPN Load Balance mechanism profile**

After finishing the connection for one tunnel, the other tunnel will dial out automatically within two seconds. Therefore, you can choose any one of members under VPN Load Balance for dialing out.

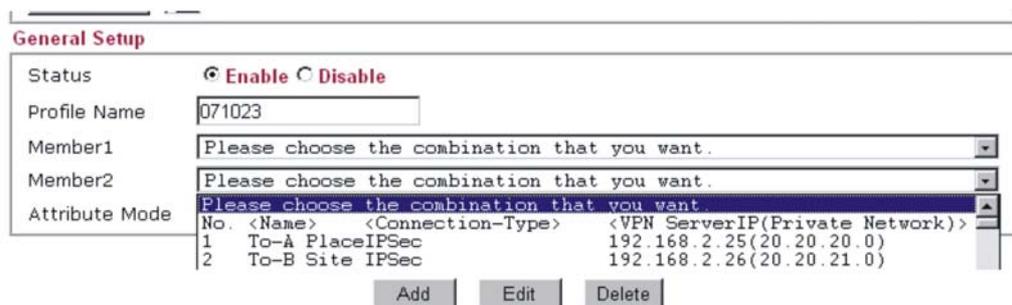
**Time for activating VPN TRUNK –Dial-out when VPN Load Balance Disconnected**

For there is one Tunnel created and connected successfully, to keep the load balance effect between two tunnels, auto-dial will be executed within two seconds.

To close two tunnels of load balance after connecting, please click **Disable** for **Status** in **General Setup** field.

**How can you set a VPN TRUNK-VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile?**

1. First of all, go to **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN-to-LAN**. Set two or more LAN-to-LAN profiles first that will be used for Member1 and Member2. If you do not set enough LAN-to-LAN profiles, you cannot operate VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup /Load Balance mechanism profile management well.
2. Access into **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN TRUNK Management**.
3. Set one group of VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism backup profile by choosing **Enable** radio button; type a name for such profile (e.g., 071023); choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member1 drop down list; choose one of the LAN-to-LAN profiles from Member2 drop down list; and click **Add** at last.



- Take a look for LAN-to-LAN profiles. Index 1 is chosen as Member1; index 2 is chosen as Member2. For such reason, LAN-to-LAN profiles of 1 and 2 will be expressed in red to indicate that they are fixed. If you delete the VPN TRUNK – VPN Backup/Load Balance mechanism profile, the selected LAN-to-LAN profiles will be released and expressed in black.

**VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN**

**LAN-to-LAN Profiles:**

Index	Name	Status
1.	To-A Place	▼
2.	To-B Site	▼
3.	To-C place	▼
4.	To-D Site	▼
5.	???	▼

**How can you set a GRE over IPSec profile?**

- Please go to LAN to LAN to set a profile with IPSec.
- If the router will be used as the VPN Server (i.e., with virtual address 192.168.50.200). Please type 192.168.50.200 in the field of My GRE IP. Type IP address (192.168.50.100) of the client in the field of Peer GRE IP. See the following graphic for an example.

Callback Budget  minute(s)

**4. GRE over IPSec Settings**

Enable IPSec Dial-Out function GRE over IPSec

Logical Traffic

**5. TCP/IP Network Settings**

My WAN IP

Remote Gateway IP

RIP Direction

From first subnet to remote network, you have to do

- Later, on peer side (as VPN Client): please type 192.168.50.100 in the field of My GRE IP and type IP address of the server (192.168.50.200) in the field of Peer GRE IP.

Callback Budget  minute(s)

**4. GRE over IPSec Settings**

Enable IPSec Dial-Out function GRE over IPSec

Logical Traffic

**5. TCP/IP Network Settings**

My WAN IP

Remote Gateway IP

RIP Direction

From first subnet to remote network, you have to do

Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )

## Advanced Load Balance and Backup

After setting profiles for load balance, you can choose any one of them and click Advance for more detailed configuration. The windows for advanced load balance and backup are different. Refer to the following explanation:

### Advanced Load Balance

**Profile Name** List the load balance profile name.

**Load Balance Algorithm** **Round Robin** – Based on packet base, both tunnels will send the packet alternatively. Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with fixed rate.

**Weighted Round Robin** –Such method can reach the balance of packet transmission with flexible rate. It can be divided into Auto Weighted and According to Speed Ratio. **Auto Weighted** can detect the device speed (10Mbps/100Mbps) and switch with fixed value ratio (3:7) for packet transmission. If the transmission rate for packets on both sides of the tunnels is the same, the value of Auto Weighted should be 5.5. **According to Speed Ratio** allows user to adjust suitable rate manually. There are 100 groups of rate ratio for Member1:Member2 (range from 1:99 to 99:1).

**Fastest** – Based on available bandwidth that integrated and

## VPN Load Balance – Binding Tunnel Policy

considered by DrayOS system, the system can adjust dynamically for bandwidth of both VPN tunnels. In most cases, VPN Tunnel with high rate will use the WAN interface which has more available bandwidth.

Below shows the algorithm for Load Balance.

**Create** – Click this radio button for assign a blank table for configuring Binding Tunnel.

**After insert** – Click this radio button to adding a new binding tunnel table.

**Tunnel Bind Table Index**- 400 binding tunnel tables are provided by this device. Choose any one of them for such Load Balance profile.

**Active** – In-active/Delete can delete this binding tunnel table. Active can activate this binding tunnel table.

**Binding Dial Out Index** – Specify connection type for transmission by choosing the index (LAN to LAN Profile Index) for such binding tunnel table.

**Binding Set IP Start /End**– Specify source IP addresses as starting point and ending point.

**Binding Dest IP Start/End** – Specify destination IP addresses as starting point and ending point.

**Binding Dest Port Start /End**– Specify destination service port as starting point and ending point.

**Binding Fragmented** – Non fragmented packets will be bound with such tunnel table if you choose **No**. Fragmented packets will be bound with such tunnel table if you choose **Yes**.

**Binding Protocol** – **Any** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here, such binding tunnel table can be established for TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP specified here.

**TCP** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. **UDP** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. **TCP/UDP** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and TCP/UDP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. **ICMP** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here and ICMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. **IGMP** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions

match with the settings specified here and IGMP Service Port also fits the number here, such binding tunnel table can be established. **Other** means when the source IP, destination IP, destination port and fragment conditions match with the settings specified here with different TCP Service Port/UDP Service Port/ICMP/IGMP, such binding tunnel table can be established.

## Detail Information

This field will display detailed information for Binding Tunnel Policy. Below shows a successful binding tunnel policy for load balance:

**VPN Load Balance - Binding Tunnel Policy**

Create  After insert

Tunnel Bind Table Index:  (1~400)

Active:

Binding Dial Out Index:

Binding Src IP Start:  End:

Binding Dest IP Start:  End:

Binding Dest Port Start:  End:

Binding Fragmented:  Binding Protocol:

**Finish setting up!!**

OK Close

---

**Detail Information**

[VPN Load Balance Profile name: VpnLB1 ]  
 [Algorithm: Fastest ]

No.1 ---> Tunnel Bind Table Idnex :2

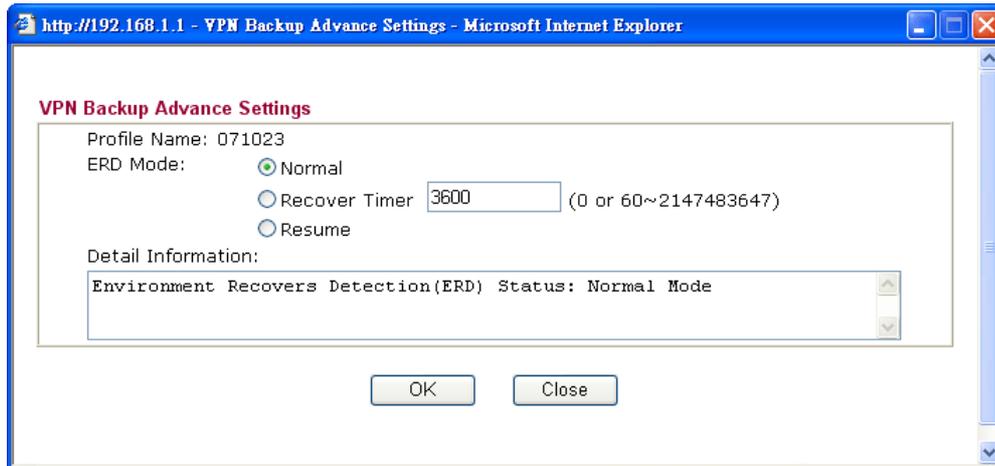
```

-----
Binding Dial Out Index = 1
Binding protocol       = TCP Protocol 6
Binding Src IP        = 192.168.10.24 ~ 192.168.10.24
Binding Dst IP        = 192.168.1.20 ~ 192.168.1.20
Binding Dst Port      = 20 ~ 21
Binding Fragmented    = NO
  
```

**Note :** To configure a successful binding tunnel, you have to:

- Type Binding Src IP range (Start and End) and Binding Des IP range (Start and End) Choose YES or NO for Binding Fragmented. If you choose YES for Binding Fragmented, you don't need to choose Binding Protocol.
- Type Binding Src IP range (Start and End) and Binding Des IP range (Start and End). Choose YES or NO for Binding Fragmented. If you choose **NO** for Binding Fragmented, please choose TCP/UDP, IGMP/ICMP or Other as Binding Protocol.

## Advanced Backup



### Profile Name

List the backup profile name.

### ERD Mode

ERD means “Environment Recovers Detection”.

**Normal** – choose this mode to make all dial-out VPN TRUNK backup profiles being activated alternatively.

**Recover Timer** – choose this mode to detect VPN connection periodically and type the value for it (the unit is second). If VPN server for Member 1 has completed the network connection, current VPN Tunnel backup connection will be off.

**Resume** – when VPN connection breaks down or disconnects, Member 1 will be the top priority for the system to do VPN connection.

### Detail Information

This field will display detailed information for Environment Recovers Detection.

## 3.9.10 Connection Management

You can find the summary table of all VPN connections. You may disconnect any VPN connection by clicking **Drop** button. You may also aggressively Dial-out by using Dial-out Tool and clicking **Dial** button. After adding a new VPN TRUNK profile, it will be listed in Backup/Load Balance Mode drop-down list for you to choose for dialing.

### VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

**Dial-out Tool** Refresh Seconds :  Refresh

General Mode:	<input type="text" value="( Alfa ) 192.168.0.26"/>	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>	
Backup Mode:	<input type="text" value="( VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.103"/>	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>	
Load Balance Mode:	<input type="text" value="( LoadBalance ) 192.168.2.104"/>	<input type="button" value="Dial"/>	

**VPN Connection Status**

Current Page: 1 Page No.  Go >>

VPN	Type	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate	UpTime

### General Mode

This field displays the profile configured in LAN-to-LAN (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by General Mode does not support VPN

backup function.

Refresh Seconds :

General Mode:	(Alfa ) 192.168.0.26	Dial
Backup Mode:	Alfa ) 192.168.0.26	Dial
Load Balance Mode:	Bentley ) 192.168.0.27	Dial
	Audi ) 192.168.0.28	
	BMW ) 192.168.0.29	
	Buick ) 192.168.0.30	
	Cadillac ) 192.168.0.31	
	Chrysler ) 192.168.0.32	
	Citroen ) 192.168.0.33	
	Daihatsu ) 192.168.0.34	
	Ferrari ) 192.168.0.35	
	Fiat ) 192.168.0.36	

n Status  
 1  
 Type Remote  
 Rx Rx  
 Pkts Rate  
 : Data is er  
 : Data isn't

Page No. |

### Backup Mode

This field displays the profile name saved in VPN TRUNK Management (with Index number and VPN Server IP address). The VPN connection built by Backup Mode supports VPN backup function.

General Mode:	(Alfa ) 192.168.0.26	Dial
Backup Mode:	(VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.103	Dial
Load Balance Mode:	(VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.103	Dial
	(VpnBackup ) 192.168.2.203	

### Dial

Click this button to execute dial out function.

### Refresh Seconds

Choose the time for refresh the dial information among 5, 10, and 30.

### Refresh

Click this button to refresh the whole connection status.

## 3.10 Certificate Management

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

Any entity wants to utilize digital certificates should first request a certificate issued by a CA server. It should also retrieve certificates of other trusted CA servers so it can authenticate the peer with certificates issued by those trusted CA servers.

Here you can manage generate and manage the local digital certificates, and set trusted CA certificates. Remember to adjust the time of Vigor router before using the certificate so that you can get the correct valid period of certificate.

Below shows the menu items for Certificate Management.



### 3.10.1 Local Certificate

This page allows users to adopt single certificate or multiple certificates for certification through generating or importing. Users can generate up to three local certificates or they can import the third-party certificate(s) to fit different requests.

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

#### GENERATE

Click this button to open **Generate Certificate Signing Request** window. Type in all the information that the window request such as certificate name (used for identifying different certificate), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click **GENERATE** again.

Generate Certificate Signing Request

<b>Certificate Name</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
Type	IP Address <input type="button" value="v"/>
IP	<input type="text"/>
<b>Subject Name</b>	
Country (C)	<input type="text"/>
State (ST)	<input type="text"/>
Location (L)	<input type="text"/>
Organization (O)	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit (OU)	<input type="text"/>
Common Name (CN)	<input type="text"/>
Email (E)	<input type="text"/>
<b>Key Type</b>	RSA <input type="button" value="v"/>
<b>Key Size</b>	1024 Bit <input type="button" value="v"/>

**Note:** Please be noted that “Common Name” must be configured with rotuer’s WAN IP or domain name.

After clicking **GENERATE**, the generated information will be displayed on the window below:

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
server	/C=TW/ST=Hsinchu/L=Hsinchu/O...	Requesting	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**IMPORT**

Vigor router allows you to generate a certificate request and submit it the CA server, then import it as “Local Certificate”. If you have already gotten a certificate from a third party, you may import it directly. The supported types are PKCS12 Certificate and Certificate with a private key.

Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information. There are three types of local certificate supported by Vigor router.

**Import X509 Local Certificate**

**Upload Local Certificate**  
 Select a local certificate file.  
 Certificate file:    
 Click [Import](#) to upload the local certificate.

---

**Upload PKCS12 Certificate**  
 Select a PKCS12 file.  
 PKCS12 file:    
 Password:   
 Click [Import](#) to upload the PKCS12 file.

---

**Upload Certificate and Private Key**  
 Select a certificate file and a matchable Private Key.  
 Certificate file:    
 Key file:    
 Password:   
 Click [Import](#) to upload the local certificate and private key.

**Upload Local Certificate** It allows users to import the certificate which is generated by vigor router and signed by CA server.  
 If you have done well in certificate generation, the Status of the certificate will be shown as “OK”.



**X509 Local Certificate Configuration**

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
draytekdemo	/O=Draytek/OU=Draytek Sales/...	OK	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
---	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**Upload PKCS12 Certificate** It allows users to import the certificate whose extensions are usually .pfx or .p12. And these certificates usually need passwords.

**Note:** PKCS12 is a standard for storing private keys and certificates securely. It is used in (among other things) Netscape and Microsoft Internet Explorer with their import and export options.

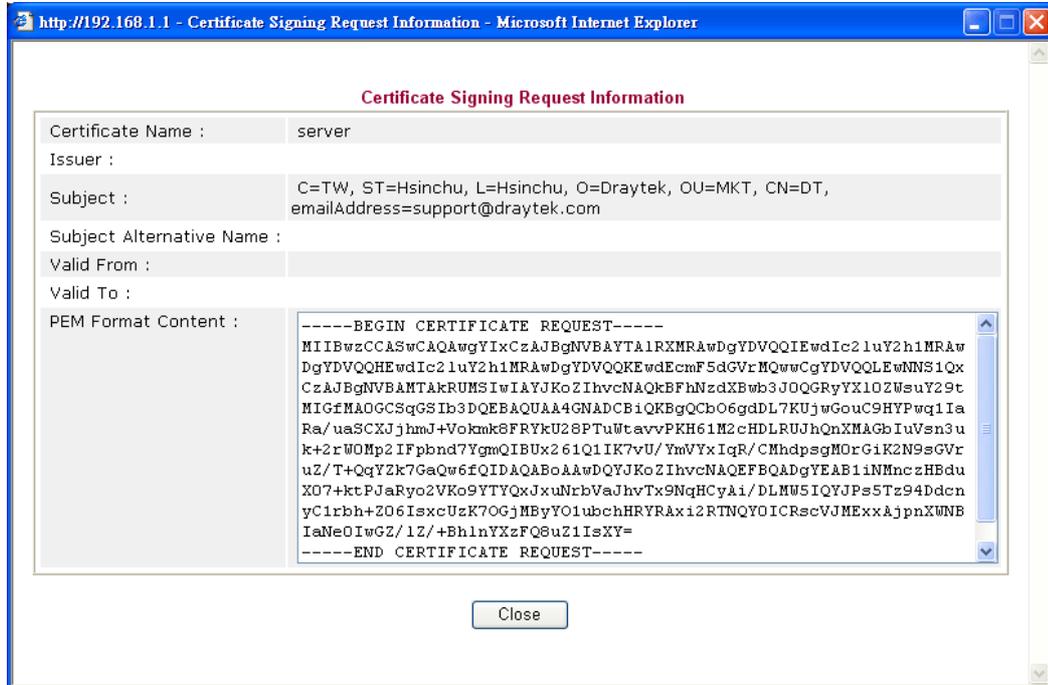
**Upload Certificate and Private Key** It is useful when users have separated certificates and private keys. And the password is needed if the private key is encrypted.

## REFRESH

Click this button to refresh the information listed below.

## View

Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.



**Note:** You have to copy the certificate request information from above window. Next, access your CA server and enter the page of certificate request, copy the information into it and submit a request. A new certificate will be issued to you by the CA server. You can save it.

### 3.10.2 Trusted CA Certificate

Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate.

[Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate](#)

#### X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
Trusted CA-1	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Trusted CA-2	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Trusted CA-3	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window. Use **Browse...** to find out the saved text file. Then click **Import**. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window. Then click **Import** to use the pre-saved file.

[Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate](#)

#### Import X509 Trusted CA Certificate

Select a trusted CA certificate file.

Click [Import](#) to upload the certification.

For viewing each trusted CA certificate, click **View** to open the certificate detail information window. If you want to delete a CA certificate, choose the one and click **Delete** to remove all the certificate information.



### 3.10.3 Certificate Backup

Local certificate and Trusted CA certificate for this router can be saved within one file. Please click **Backup** on the following screen to save them. If you want to set encryption password for these certificates, please type characters in both fields of **Encrypt password** and **Retype password**.

Also, you can use **Restore** to retrieve these two settings to the router whenever you want.

[Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup](#)

**Certificate Backup / Restoration**

**Backup**

Encrypt password:

Confirm password:

Click  to download certificates to your local PC as a file.

---

**Restoration**

Select a backup file to restore.

Decrypt password:

Click  to upload the file.

### 3.11 VoIP

Voice over IP network (VoIP) enables you to use your broadband Internet connection to make toll quality voice calls over the Internet.

There are many different call signaling protocols, methods by which VoIP devices can talk to each other. The most popular protocols are SIP, MGCP, Megaco and H.323. These protocols are not all compatible with each other (except via a soft-switch server).

The Vigor V models support the SIP protocol as this is an ideal and convenient deployment for the ITSP (Internet Telephony Service Provider) and softphone and is widely supported. SIP is an end-to-end, signaling protocol that establishes user presence and mobility in VoIP structure. Every one who wants to talk using his/her SIP Uniform Resource Identifier, "SIP Address". The standard format of SIP URI is

**sip: user:password @ host: port**

Some fields may be optional in different use. In general, "host" refers to a domain. The "userinfo" includes the user field, the password field and the @ sign following them. This is very similar to a URL so some may call it "SIP URL". SIP supports peer-to-peer direct calling and also calling via a SIP proxy server (a role similar to the gatekeeper in H.323 networks), while the MGCP protocol uses client-server architecture, the calling scenario being very similar to the current PSTN/ISDN network.

After a call is setup, the voice streams transmit via RTP (Real-Time Transport Protocol). Different codecs (methods to compress and encode the voice) can be embedded into RTP packets. Vigor V models provide various codecs, including G.711 A/ $\mu$ -law, G.723, G.726 and G.729 A & B. Each codec uses a different bandwidth and hence provides different levels of voice quality. The more bandwidth a codec uses the better the voice quality, however the codec used must be appropriate for your Internet bandwidth.

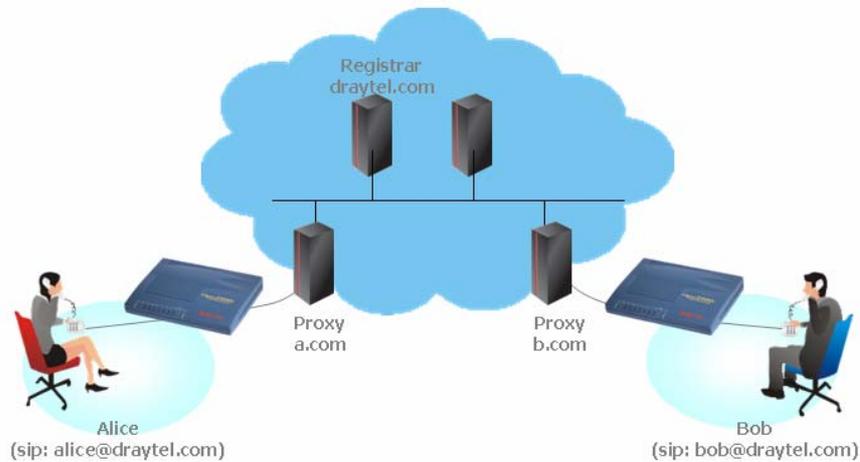
Usually there will be two types of calling scenario, as illustrated below:

- **Calling via SIP Servers**

First, the Vigor V models of yours will have to register to a SIP Registrar by sending

registration messages to validate. Then, both parties' SIP proxies will forward the sequence of messages to caller to establish the session.

If you both register to the same SIP Registrar, then it will be illustrated as below:



The major benefit of this mode is that you don't have to memorize your friend's IP address, which might change very frequently if it's dynamic. Instead of that, you will only have to using **dial plan** or directly dial your friend's **account name** if you are with the same SIP Registrar. Please refer to the **section 4.5.1**.

- **Peer-to-Peer**

Before calling, you have to know your friend's IP Address. The Vigor VoIP Routers will build connection between each other. Please refer to the **section 4.5.2**.



Our Vigor V models firstly apply efficient codecs designed to make the best use of available bandwidth, but Vigor V models also equip with automatic QoS assurance. QoS Assurance assists to assign high priority to voice traffic via Internet. You will always have the required inbound and outbound bandwidth that is prioritized exclusively for Voice traffic over Internet but you just get your data a little slower and it is tolerable for data traffic.



### 3.11.1 DialPlan

This page allows you to set phone book and digit map for the VoIP function. Click the **Phone Book** and **Digit Map** links on the page to access into next pages for dialplan settings.

DialPlan Configuration

[Phone Book](#)

[Digit Map](#)

[Call Barring](#)

[Regional](#)

## Phone Book

In this section, you can set your VoIP contacts in the “phonebook”. It can help you to make calls quickly and easily by using “speed-dial” **Phone Number**. There are total 60 index entries in the phonebook for you to store all your friends and family members’ SIP addresses. **Loop through** and **Backup Phone Number** will be displayed if you are using Vigor 2930V for setting the phone book.

Phone Book

Index	Phone number	Display Name	SIP URL	Loop through	Backup Phone Number	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	688	david	8201@iptel.org	None		v
<a href="#">2.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">3.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">4.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">5.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">6.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">7.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">8.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">9.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">10.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">11.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">12.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">13.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">14.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">15.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">16.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">17.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">18.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">19.</a>				None		x
<a href="#">20.</a>				None		x

<< [1-20](#) | [20-40](#) | [40-60](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

Phone Book Index No. 1

Enable

Phone Number

Display Name

SIP URL  @

### Enable

Click this to enable this entry.

### Phone Number

The speed-dial number of this index. This can be any number you choose, using digits **0-9** and **\*** .

**Display Name** The Caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen. This let your friend can easily know who's calling without memorizing lots of SIP URL Address.

**SIP URL** Enter your friend's SIP Address

This page will differ for different models. Below is a sample page obtained from Vigor 2930VSn. The selection of **Loop through** and **Backup Phone Number** is only available for 2930VSn model.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Phone Book Index No. 1

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Phone Number	<input type="text" value="1"/>	
Display Name	<input type="text" value="Polly"/>	
SIP URL	<input type="text" value="1112"/> @ <input type="text" value="fwd.pulver.com"/>	
Loop through	<input type="text" value="None"/>	
Backup Phone Number	<input type="text"/>	

**Enable** Click this to enable this entry.

**Phone Number** The speed-dial number of this index. This can be any number you choose, using digits **0-9** and **\*** .

**Display Name** The Caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen. This let your friend can easily know who's calling without memorizing lots of SIP URL Address.

**SIP URL** Enter your friend's SIP Address

**Loop through** For the model of Vigor 2930VSn, the selection should be as the following:

Loop through

None	▼
None	
ISDN2-TE	

**Backup Phone Number** When the VoIP phone is obstructs or the Internet breaks down for some reasons, the backup phone will be dialed out to replace the VoIP phone number. At this time, the phone call will be changed from VoIP phone into PSTN call according to the loop through direction chosen. Note that, during the phone switch, the blare of phone will appear for a short time. And when the VoIP phone is switched into the PSTN phone, the telecom co. might charge you for the connection fee. Please type in backup phone number (PSTN number) for this VoIP phone setting.

## Digit Map

For the convenience of user, this page allows users to edit prefix number for the SIP account with adding number, stripping number or replacing number. It is used to help user having a quick and easy way to dial out through VoIP interface.

## Digit Map Setup

#	Enable	Prefix Number	Mode	OP Number	Min Len	Max Len	Interface
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	03	Replace	8863	7	9	ISDN2-TE
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	886	Strip	886	8	10	ISDN2-TE
3	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
4	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
5	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
6	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
7	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
8	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
9	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
10	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
11	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
12	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
13	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
14	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
15	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
16	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
17	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
18	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
19	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE
20	<input type="checkbox"/>		None		0	0	ISDN2-TE

**Note:** The length of Prefix Number should be between Min Len and Max Len. Min Len and Max Len should be between 0~11.

OK Cancel

**Enable**

Check this box to invoke this setting.

**Prefix Number**

The phone number set here is used to add, strip, or replace the OP number.

**Mode**

**None** - No action.

**Add** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be added with the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface.

**Strip** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be deleted by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the OP number of 886 will be deleted completely for the prefix number is set with 886.

**Replace** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be replaced by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the prefix number of 03 will be replaced by 8863. For example: dial number of "03111111" will be changed to "886311111" and sent to

SIP server.  
Mode

Replace ▾  
None  
Add  
Strip  
Replace

- OP Number** The front number you type here is the first part of the account number that you want to execute special function (according to the chosen mode) by using the prefix number.
- Min Len** Set the minimal length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, if the dial number is between 7 and 9, that number can apply the prefix number settings here.
- Max Len** Set the maximum length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings.
- Interface** Choose the one that you want to enable the prefix number settings from the saved SIP accounts. Please set up one SIP account first to make this interface available.

## Call Barring

Call barring is used to block phone calls that are not welcomed.

VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Setup | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Call Direction	Barring Type	Barring Number/URL/URI	Interface	Schedule	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>						x
<a href="#">2.</a>						x
<a href="#">3.</a>						x
<a href="#">4.</a>						x
<a href="#">5.</a>						x
<a href="#">6.</a>						x
<a href="#">7.</a>						x
<a href="#">8.</a>						x
<a href="#">9.</a>						x
<a href="#">10.</a>						x

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >> [Next](#) >>

Advanced:  
[Block Anonymous](#)  
[Block Unknown Domain](#)  
[Block IP Address](#)

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

**Call Barring Index No. 1**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	
Call Direction	IN
Barring Type	Specific URI/URL
Specific URI/URL	
Interface	All
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup	<input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>

**Enable**

Click this to enable this entry.

**Call Direction**

Determine the direction for the phone call, IN – incoming call, OUT-outgoing call, IN & OUT – both incoming and outgoing calls.

**Barring Type**

Determine the type of the VoIP phone call, URI/URL or number.

**Specific URI/URL or Specific Number** - This field will be changed based on the type you selected for barring Type.

**Interface**

“All” means all the phone calls (including ISDN & PSTN) will be blocked with such mechanism.

”ISDN” means only ISDN phone call will be blocked with such mechanism.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule**

Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the call barring according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **3.5.2 Schedule** for detailed configuration.

Additionally, you can set advanced settings for call barring such as **Block Anonymous**, **Block Unknown Domain** or **Block IP Address**. Simply click the relational links to open the web page.

For **Block Anonymous** – this function can block the incoming calls without caller ID on the interface (Phone 1 or Phone 2 or both) specified in the following window. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

## VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

### Call Barring Block Anonymous

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable				
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone2		
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

**Note:**Block the incoming calls which do not have the caller ID.

OK Cancel

For **Block Unknown Domain** – this function can block incoming calls from unrecognized domain that is not specified in SIP accounts. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

## VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

### Call Barring Block Unknown Domain

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable				
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone2		
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

**Note:**If the domain of the incoming call is different from the domain found in SIP accounts,the call should be blocked.

OK Cancel

For **Block IP Address** – this function can block incoming calls coming from IP address. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

## VoIP >> DialPlan Setup

### Call Barring Block IP Address

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable				
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone2		
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

**Note:**The incoming calls by means of IP dialing (e.g.#192\*168\*1\*1#) should be blocked.

OK Cancel

## Regional

This page allows you to process incoming or outgoing phone calls by regional. Default values (common used in most areas) will be shown on this web page. You *can change* the number based on the region that the router is placed.

Regional		<a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a>	
Last Call Return [Miss]:	<input type="text" value="*69"/>		
Last Call Return [In]:	<input type="text" value="*12"/>	Last Call Return [Out]:	<input type="text" value="*14"/>
Call Forward [All] [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*72+number+#"/>	Call Forward [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*73+#"/>
Call Forward [Busy] [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*90+number+#"/>	Call Forward [No Ans] [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*92+number+#"/>
Do Not Disturb [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*78"/>	Do Not Disturb [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*79"/>
Hide caller ID [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*67"/>	Hide caller ID [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*68"/>
Call Waiting [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*56"/>	Call Waiting [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*57"/>
Block Anonymous [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*77"/>	Block Anonymous [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*87"/>
Block Unknow Domain [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*40"/>	Block Unknow Domain [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*04"/>
Block IP Calls [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*50"/>	Block IP Calls [Deact]:	<input type="text" value="*05"/>
Block Last Calls [Act]:	<input type="text" value="*60"/>		

OK

Cancel

**Last Call Return [Miss]**

Sometimes, people might miss some phone calls. Please dial number typed in this field to know where the last phone call comes from and call back to that one.

**Last Call Return [In]**

You have finished an incoming phone call, however you want to call back again for some reason. Please dial number typed in this field to call back to that one.

**Last Call Return [Out]**

Dial the number typed in this field to call the previous outgoing phone call again.

**Call Forward [All][Act]**

Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place.

**Call Forward [Deact]**

Dial the number typed in this field to release the call forward function.

**Call Forward [Busy][Act]**

Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place while the phone is busy.

**Call Forward [No Ans][Act]** Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place while there is no answer of the connected phone.

**Do Not Disturb [Act]**

Dial the number typed in this field to invoke the function of DND.

**Do Not Distrub [Deact]**

Dial the number typed in this field to release the DND function.

**Hide caller ID [Act]**

Dial the number typed in this field to make your phone number (ID) not displayed on the display panel of remote end.

**Hide caller ID [Deact]**

Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.

<b>Call Waiting [Act]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to make all the incoming calls waiting for your answer.
<b>Call Waiting [Deact]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
<b>Block Anonymous[Act]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls with unknown ID.
<b>Block Anonymous[Deact]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
<b>Block Unknown Domain [Act]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls from unknown domain.
<b>Block Unknown Domain [Deact]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
<b>Block IP Calls [Act]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls from IP address.
<b>Block IP Calls [Deact]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
<b>Block Last Calls [Act]</b>	Dial the number typed in this field to block the last incoming phone call.

### 3.11.2 SIP Accounts

In this section, you set up your own SIP settings. When you apply for an account, your SIP service provider will give you an **Account Name** or user name, **SIP Registrar**, **Proxy**, and **Domain name**. (The last three might be the same in some case). Then you can tell your folks your SIP Address as in **Account Name@ Domain name**

As Vigor VoIP Router is turned on, it will first register with Registrar using AuthorizationUser@Domain/Realm. After that, your call will be bypassed by SIP Proxy to the destination using AccountName@Domain/Realm as identity.

SIP Accounts List

Refresh

Index	Profile	Domain/Realm	Proxy	Account Name	Ring Port	Status
<a href="#">1</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">2</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">3</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">4</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">5</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">6</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">7</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">8</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">9</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">10</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">11</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-
<a href="#">12</a>				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	-

R: success registered on SIP server  
 -: fail to register on SIP server

NAT Traversal Setting

STUN Server:	<input type="text"/>
External IP:	<input type="text"/>
SIP PING Interval:	<input type="text" value="150"/> sec

OK

<b>Index</b>	Click this link to access into next page for setting SIP account.
<b>Profile</b>	Display the profile name of the account.
<b>Domain/Realm</b>	Display the domain name or IP address of the SIP registrar server.
<b>Proxy</b>	Display the domain name or IP address of the SIP proxy server.
<b>Account Name</b>	Display the account name of SIP address before @.
<b>Ring Port</b>	Specify which port will ring when receiving a phone call. Set Phone1, Phone2, ISDN1-S0 or ISDN-TE as the default ring port for the SIP account. If you choose Phone1, Phone2 or ISDN1-S0, the ISDN2-TE selection will be dimmed, vice versa. There are ten internal lines with numbers (30 – 39) offered for <b>ISDN-S0</b> . You can specify any one of them as ring port for specified SIP account. By the way, ISDN-S0 can be used by mapping with MSN numbers.
<b>STUN Server</b>	Type in the IP address or domain of the STUN server.
<b>External IP</b>	Type in the gateway IP address.
<b>SIP PING interval</b>	The default value is 150 (sec). It is useful for a Nortel server NAT Traversal Support.
<b>Status</b>	Show the status for the corresponding SIP account. <b>R</b> means such account is registered on SIP server successfully. – means the account is failed to register on SIP server.

**VoIP >> SIP Accounts**

**SIP Account Index No. 1**

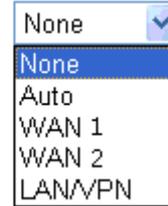
Profile Name	<input type="text"/>	(11 char max.)
Register via	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Call without Registration
SIP Port	<input type="text" value="5060"/>	
Domain/Realm	<input type="text"/>	(63 char max.)
Proxy	<input type="text"/>	(63 char max.)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Act as outbound proxy	
Display Name	<input type="text"/>	(23 char max.)
Account Number/Name	<input type="text" value="change_me"/>	(63 char max.)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Authentication ID	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>	(63 char max.)
Expiry Time	1 hour <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="text" value="3600"/> sec
NAT Traversal Support	None <input type="button" value="v"/>	
Ring Port	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2	
	<input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="button" value="v"/>	
	<input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE	
Ring Pattern	<input type="button" value="v"/>	

<b>Profile Name</b>	Assign a name for this profile for identifying. You can type similar name with the domain. For example, if the domain name is <i>draytel.org</i> , then you might set <i>draytel-1</i> in this field.
---------------------	---

**Register via**

If you want to make VoIP call without register personal information, please choose **None** and check the box to achieve the goal. Some SIP server allows user to use VoIP function without registering. For such server, please check the box of **Call without registration**. Choosing **Auto** is recommended. The system will select a proper way for your VoIP call.

Register via

**SIP Port**

Set the port number for sending/receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is **5060**. Your peer must set the same value in his/her Registrar.

**Domain/Realm**

Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.

**Proxy**

Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type **:port number** after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission (e.g., **nat.draytel.org:5065**)

**Act as Outbound Proxy**

Check this box to make the proxy acting as outbound proxy.

**Display Name**

The caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen.

**Account Number/Name**

Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @.

**Authentication ID**

Check the box to invoke this function and enter the name or number used for SIP Authorization with SIP Registrar. If this setting value is the same as Account Name, it is not necessary for you to check the box and set any value in this field.

**Password**

The password provided to you when you registered with a SIP service.

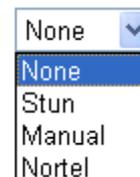
**Expiry Time**

The time duration that your SIP Registrar server keeps your registration record. Before the time expires, the router will send another register request to SIP Registrar again.

**NAT Traversal Support**

If the router (e.g., broadband router) you use connects to internet by other device, you have to set this function for your necessity.

NAT Traversal Support



**None** – Disable this function.

**Stun** – Choose this option if there is Stun server provided for your router.

**Manual** – Choose this option if you want to specify an external IP address as the NAT transversal support.

**Nortel** – If the soft-switch that you use supports Nortel solution, you can choose this option.

### Ring Port

Set Phone1, Phone2, ISDN1-S0 or ISDN-TE as the default ring port for this SIP account. If you choose Phone1, Phone2 or ISDN1-S0, the ISDN2-TE selection will be dimmed, vice versa. There are ten internal lines with numbers (30 – 39) offered for **ISDN-S0**. You can specify one of them or choose **Any** as ring port for specified SIP account. By the way, ISDN-S0 can be used by mapping with MSN numbers.

### Ring Pattern

Choose a ring tone type for the VoIP phone call.

Ring Pattern

1	▼
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

## 3.11.3 Phone Settings

This page allows user to set phone settings for Phone1, Phone2, ISDN1-S0 and ISDN2-TE/S0 respectively.

[VoIP >> Phone Settings](#)

#### Phone List

Index	Port	Call Feature	Codec	Tone	Gain (Mic/Speaker)	Default SIP Account	DTMF Relay
1	Phone1		G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5		InBand
2	Phone2		G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5		InBand
3	ISDN1-S0		G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5		InBand
4	ISDN2-TE ▼		G.729A/B	User Defined	5/5		InBand

#### RTP

<input type="checkbox"/> Symmetric RTP	
Dynamic RTP Port Start	<input type="text" value="10050"/>
Dynamic RTP Port End	<input type="text" value="15000"/>
RTP TOS	<input type="text" value="IP precedence 5"/> <input type="text" value="10100000"/>
VoIP Collection Timer	<input type="text" value="4"/> sec
VoIP Collection Timer Length	<input type="text" value="4"/>

OK

### Phone List

**Port** – There are four phone ports provided here for you to configure. Three (Index 1 to 3) are fixed and one (Index 4) is configurable. **Phone1** and **Phone2** allow you to set general settings for PSTN phones. **ISDN1-S0** and **ISDN2-TE** allow you to set common settings for ISDN network connection. ISDN2 port is configurable. Please use the drop down list to choose **ISDN2-TE** for Internet connection or choose **ISDN2-S0** (ISDN intern) for ISDN phone. In addition, you can connect six phones to this router in certain case. Please refer to **Section 4-1** for detailed information of ISDN phone/network connection.

If you want to enable function of ISDN On-Net/Off-Net, you have to choose ISDN2-TE.

**Call Feature** – A brief description for call feature will be shown in this field for your reference.

**Codec** – The default Codec setting for each port will be shown in this field for your reference. You can click the number below the Index field to change it for each phone port.

**Tone** - Display the tone settings that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

**Gain** - Display the volume gain settings for Mic/Speaker that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

**Default SIP Account** – “draytel\_1” is the default SIP account. You can click the number below the Index field to change SIP account for each phone port.

**DTMF Relay** – Display DTMF mode that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

## RTP

**Symmetric RTP** – Check this box to invoke the function. To make the data transmission going through on both ends of local router and remote router not misleading due to IP lost (for example, sending data from the public IP of remote router to the private IP of local router), you can check this box to solve this problem.

**Dynamic RTP Port Start** - Specifies the start port for RTP stream. The default value is 10050.

**Dynamic RTP Port End** - Specifies the end port for RTP stream. The default value is 15000.

**RTP TOS** – It decides the level of VoIP package. Use the drop down list to choose any one of them.

Manual  
IP precedence 1  
IP precedence 2  
IP precedence 3  
IP precedence 4  
IP precedence 5  
IP precedence 6  
IP precedence 7  
AF Class1 (Low Drop)  
AF Class1 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class1 (High Drop)  
AF Class2 (Low Drop)  
AF Class2 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class2 (High Drop)  
AF Class3 (Low Drop)  
AF Class3 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class3 (High Drop)  
AF Class4 (Low Drop)  
AF Class4 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class4 (High Drop)  
EF Class

RTP TOS Manual

**VoIP Collection Timer** – Keep the default setting.

**VoIP Collection Timer Length** - Keep the default setting.

## Detailed Settings for Phone1/Phone2 Port

Click the number link of each port, you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings. Below is the sample page for Phone1.

**Phone1**

<p><b>Call Feature</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hotline <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer <input type="text" value="3600"/> sec</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> T.38 Fax Function</p> <p>Call Forwarding <input type="text" value="Disable"/> ▼</p> <p>SIP URL <input type="text"/></p> <p>Time Out <input type="text" value="30"/> sec</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode</p> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.</p> <p>Index(1-60) in <b>Phone Book</b> as Exception List: <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/>, <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> CLIR (hide caller ID)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Call Waiting</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Call Transfer</p>		<p><b>Codecs</b></p> <p>Prefer Codec <input style="border: none; border-bottom: 1px solid black; background-color: #e0e0e0; width: 100%;" type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/> ▼</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec</p> <p>Packet Size <input type="text" value="20ms"/> ▼</p> <p>Voice Active Detector <input type="text" value="Off"/> ▼</p> <p><b>Default SIP Account</b> <input style="border: none; border-bottom: 1px solid black; background-color: #e0e0e0; width: 100%;" type="text"/> ▼</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Play dial tone only when account registered</p> <p><b>Default Call Route</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> To ISDN: Dial <input type="text" value="*#"/> for VoIP</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> To VoIP: Dial <input type="text" value="#"/> for ISDN</p>	
---	--	--	--

**Hotline**

Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.

**Session Timer**

Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.

**Call Forwarding**

There are four options for you to choose. **Disable** is to close call forwarding function. **Always** means all the incoming calls from Internet will be forwarded into SIP URL without any reason. **Busy** means the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL only when the local system is busy. **No answer** means if the incoming calls do not receive any response, they will be forwarded to the SIP URL by the time out.



**SIP URL** – Type in the SIP URL (e.g., aaa@draytel.org or abc@iptel.org) as the site for call forwarded.

**Time Out** – Set the time out for the call forwarding. The default setting is 30 sec.

**DND (Do Not Disturb) mode**

Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the DND mode according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **3.5.2 Schedule** for

detailed configuration.

**Index (1-60) in Phone Book** - Enter the index of phone book profiles. Refer to section **3.11.1 DialPlan – Phone Book** for detailed configuration.

**CLIR (hide caller ID)**

Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.

**Call Waiting**

Check this box to invoke this function. A notice sound will appear to tell the user new phone call is waiting for your response. Click hook flash to pick up the waiting phone call.

**Call Transfer**

Check this box to invoke this function. Click hook flash to initiate another phone call. When the phone call connection succeeds, hang up the phone. The other two sides can communicate, then.

**Prefer Codec**

Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality.

If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec

G.711A (64Kbps)	▼
G.711MU (64Kbps)	
G.711A (64Kbps)	
G.729A/B (8Kbps)	
G.723 (6.4kbps)	
G.726_32 (32kbps)	

**Single Codec** – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

**Packet Size**-The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.

Packet Size

20ms	▼
10ms	
20ms	
30ms	
40ms	
50ms	
60ms	

**Voice Active Detector** - This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.

Voice Active Detector

Off	▼
Off	
On	

**Default SIP Account**

You can set SIP accounts (up to six groups) on SIP Account page. Use the drop down list to choose one of the profile names for the accounts as the default one for this phone setting.

**Play dial tone only when account registered** - Check this box to invoke the function.

### Default Call Route

It determines the default direction for the call route of the router.

**To ISDN (for VoIP)** - The router is set by using ISDN call. To change ISDN call into VoIP call, please dial the character in this field for transferring. The character that you can type can be \*, #, and 0~9.

**To VoIP (for ISDN)** - The router is set by using VoIP call. To change VoIP call into ISDN call, please dial the character in this field for transferring. The character that you can type can be \*, #, and 0~9.

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

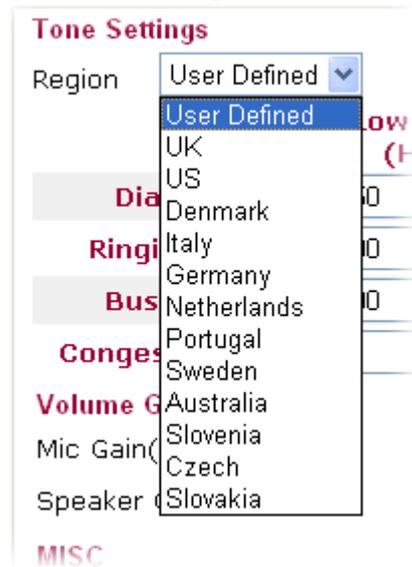
### VoIP >> Phone Settings

#### Advance Settings >> Phone1

Tone Settings						
Region	User Defined					
	Low Freq (Hz)	High Freq (Hz)	T on 1 (msec)	T off 1 (msec)	T on 2 (msec)	T off 2 (msec)
Dial tone	350	440	0	0	0	0
Ringing tone	400	450	400	200	400	2000
Busy tone	400	0	375	375	0	0
Congestion tone	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Volume Gain</b>			<b>DTMF</b>			
Mic Gain(1-10)	5		DTMF Mode		InBand	
Speaker Gain(1-10)	5		Payload Type(RFC2833)		101	
<b>MISC</b>						
Dial Tone Power Level	27					
Ring Frequency	25					

### Region

Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.



Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

**Volume Gain**

**Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.

**MISC**

**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

**Ring Frequency** - This setting is used to drive the frequency of the ring tone. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

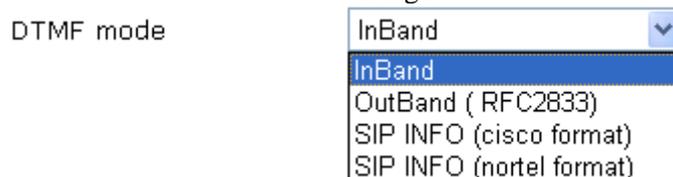
**DTMF**

**DTMF Mode** – There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.

**InBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone

**OutBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

**SIP INFO**- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.



**Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Choose a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.

## Detailed Settings for ISDN1-S0 Port

Click the number link of Index 3 (ISDN1-S0), you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings.

VoIP >> Phone Settings

**ISDN1-S0**

**Call Feature**

Hotline

Session Timer  sec

Call Forwarding  ▼

SIP URL

Time Out  sec

DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode  
 Index(1-15) in **Schedule** Setup:  
, , ,

**Note:** Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

Index(1-60) in **Phone Book** as Exception List:  
, , , ,

CLIR (hide caller ID)

Call Waiting

Call Transfer

**Codecs**

Prefer Codec  ▼

Single Codec

Packet Size  ▼

Voice Active Detector  ▼

**Default SIP Account**  ▼

SIP Account for MSN30  ▼

SIP Account for MSN31  ▼

SIP Account for MSN32  ▼

SIP Account for MSN33  ▼

SIP Account for MSN34  ▼

SIP Account for MSN35  ▼

SIP Account for MSN36  ▼

SIP Account for MSN37  ▼

SIP Account for MSN38  ▼

SIP Account for MSN39  ▼

Play dial tone only when account registered

**Default Call Route**

To ISDN: Dial  for VoIP

To VoIP: Dial  for ISDN

### Hotline

Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.

### Session Timer

Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.

### Call Forwarding

There are four options for you to choose. **Disable** is to close call forwarding function. **Always** means all the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL without any reason. **Busy** means the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL only when the local system is busy. **No answer** means if the incoming calls do not receive any response, they will be forwarded to the SIP URL by the time out.

Disable ▼

---

Disable

Always

Busy

No Answer

**SIP URL** – Type in the SIP URL (e.g., aaa@draytel.org or

abc@iptel.org) as the site for call forwarded.

**Time Out** – Set the time out for the call forwarding. The default setting is 30 sec.

**DND (Do Not Disturb) mode**

Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the DND mode according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **3.5.2 Schedule** for detailed configuration.

**Index (1-60) in Phone Book** - Enter the index of phone book profiles. Refer to section **3.10.1 DialPlan – Phone Book** for detailed configuration.

**CLIR (hide caller ID)**

Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.

**Call Waiting**

Check this box to invoke this function. A notice sound will appear to tell the user new phone call is waiting for your response. Click hook flash to pick up the waiting phone call.

**Call Transfer**

Check this box to invoke this function. Click hook flash to initiate another phone call. When the phone call connection succeeds, hang up the phone. The other two sides can communicate, then.

**Prefer Codec**

Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality. If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec

G.711A (64Kbps)	▼
G.711MU (64Kbps)	
G.711A (64Kbps)	
G.729A/B (8Kbps)	
G.723 (6.4kbps)	
G.726_32 (32kbps)	

**Single Codec** – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

**Packet Size**-The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.

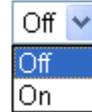
Packet Size

20ms	▼
10ms	
20ms	
30ms	
40ms	
50ms	
60ms	

**Voice Active Detector** - This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to

invoke this function; click off to close the function.

Voice Active Detector



### Default SIP Account

You can set SIP accounts (up to six groups) on SIP Account page. Use the drop down list to choose one of the profile names for the accounts as the default one for this phone setting.

ISDN-S0 port can pick up multiple incoming calls simultaneously. Therefore different phone sets (MSN30 to MSN39) can use different SIP accounts to call out through this port.

**Play dial tone only when account registered** - Check this box to invoke the function.

### Default Call Route

It determines the default direction for the call route of the router.

**To ISDN (for VoIP)** - The router is set by using ISDN call. To change ISDN call into VoIP call, please dial the character in this field for transferring. The character that you can type can be \*, #, and 0~9.

**To VoIP (for ISDN)** - The router is set by using VoIP call. To change VoIP call into ISDN call, please dial the character in this field for transferring. The character that you can type can be \*, #, and 0~9.

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC, DTMF mode and MSN number. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

Advance Settings >> ISDN1-S0

**Tone Settings**

Region

	Low Freq (Hz)	High Freq (Hz)	T on 1 (msec)	T off 1 (msec)	T on 2 (msec)	T off 2 (msec)
<b>Dial tone</b>	<input type="text" value="350"/>	<input type="text" value="440"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<b>Ringing tone</b>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="450"/>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="200"/>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="2000"/>
<b>Busy tone</b>	<input type="text" value="400"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="375"/>	<input type="text" value="375"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
<b>Congestion tone</b>	<input type="text" value="0"/>					

**Volume Gain**

Mic Gain(1-10)

Speaker Gain(1-10)

**DTMF**

DTMF Mode

Payload Type(RFC2833)

**MISC**

Dial Tone Power Level

Ring Frequency

**MSN Alias**

MSN 30	<input type="text" value="50"/>	MSN 35	<input type="text"/>
MSN 31	<input type="text"/>	MSN 36	<input type="text"/>
MSN 32	<input type="text"/>	MSN 37	<input type="text"/>
MSN 33	<input type="text"/>	MSN 38	<input type="text"/>
MSN 34	<input type="text"/>	MSN 39	<input type="text"/>

**Region**

Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.

**Tone Settings**

Region

**Dial tone**

**Ringing tone**

**Busy tone**

**Congestion tone**

**Volume Gain**

Mic Gain(1-10)

Speaker Gain(1-10)

**DTMF**

DTMF Mode

Payload Type(RFC2833)

**MISC**

Dial Tone Power Level

Ring Frequency

**MSN Alias**

MSN 30	<input type="text"/>	MSN 35	<input type="text"/>
MSN 31	<input type="text"/>	MSN 36	<input type="text"/>
MSN 32	<input type="text"/>	MSN 37	<input type="text"/>
MSN 33	<input type="text"/>	MSN 38	<input type="text"/>
MSN 34	<input type="text"/>	MSN 39	<input type="text"/>

Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

**Volume Gain**

**Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.

**MISC**

**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

**Ring Frequency** - This setting is used to drive the frequency of the ring tone. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

**DTMF**

**DTMF Mode** – There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.

**InBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone

**OutBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

**SIP INFO**- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.

DTMF mode

**Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Choose a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.

**MSN Alias**

You can modify the MSN number (default values are set from 30 – 39) with any number you desire. For example, type 50 in the box of MSN 30.

MSN Alias		
MSN 30	50	MSN 35
MSN 31		MSN 36
MSN 32		MSN 37
MSN 33		MSN 38
MSN 34		MSN 39

Later you will find MSN 30 has been replaced with MSN50 in all related pages. See the following figures for examples (pages of **VoIP>>SIP Accounts** and **VoIP>>Phone Settings**).

SIP Accounts List

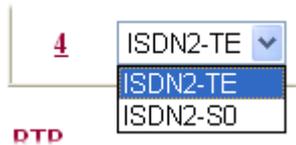
Index	Profile	Domain/Realm	Proxy	Account Name	Ring Port
1				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE
2				change_me	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE

ISDN1-S0

<p><b>Call Feature</b></p> <input type="checkbox"/> Hotline <input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer 3600 sec Call Forwarding Disable SIP URL Time Out 30 sec <input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:	<p><b>Codecs</b></p> Prefer Codec G.729AVB (8Kbps) <input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec Packet Size 20ms Voice Active Detector Off <b>Default SIP Account</b> SIP Account for MSN 50 MSN 31
--	--

**Detailed Settings for ISDN2-TE Port (Available for VS<sub>n</sub> model only)**

Vigor2930VS<sub>n</sub> allows users to switch the function of ISDN2 port between TE or S0 mode. Please use the drop down list to choose the one you want.



If you choose ISDN2-S0, please refer to Detailed Settings for Phone1, Phone2, ISDN1-S0 for the configuration. However, if you choose ISDN-TE and click the number link for that port, you will see the following page.

**ISDN2-TE**

<b>Call Feature</b>		<b>Codecs</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Hotline	ISDN->VoIP	Prefer Codec	G.729A/B (8Kbps)
<input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer	3600 sec	<input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec	
Call Forwarding	Disable	Packet Size	20ms
SIP URL		Voice Active Detector	Off
Time Out	30 sec	<b>Default SIP Account</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode	Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:	<input type="checkbox"/> Play dial tone only when account registered	
	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>FXO feature</b>	
<b>Note:</b> Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.	Index(1-60) in <b>Phone Book</b> as Exception List:	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable VoIP to ISDN (Off-Net) Calls	
	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable ISDN to VoIP (On-Net) Calls	
<input type="checkbox"/> CLIR (hide caller ID)		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Loop Through to Phone Port	Only when Router MSN mapping ring port is not set then this will take effect.
		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Broadcast call <input type="radio"/> Phone1 <input type="radio"/> Phone2	
		<input type="radio"/> Loop Through to ISDN1-S0 Port	

OK Cancel Advanced

**Hotline**

Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.

**Session Timer**

Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.

**Call Forwarding**

There are four options for you to choose. **Disable** is to close call forwarding function. **Always** means all the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL without any reason. **Busy** means the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL only when the local system is busy. **No answer** means if the incoming calls do not receive any response, they will be forwarded to the SIP URL by the time out.

Disable

- Disable
- Always
- Busy
- No Answer

**SIP URL** – Type in the SIP URL (e.g., aaa@draytel.org or abc@iptel.org) as the site for call forwarded.

**Time Out** – Set the time out for the call forwarding. The default setting is 30 sec.

**DND (Do Not Disturb) mode**

Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dials in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the DND mode according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Application>>Schedule** for detailed configuration.

**Index (1-60) in Phone Book** - Enter the index of phone book

profiles. Refer to section **VoIP>>DialPlan – Phone Book** for detailed configuration.

**CLIR (hide caller ID)**

Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.

**Prefer Codec**

Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality. If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec

G.711A (64Kbps)	▼
G.711MU (64Kbps)	
G.711A (64Kbps)	
G.729A/B (8Kbps)	
G.723 (6.4kbps)	
G.726_32 (32kbps)	

**Single Codec** – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

**Packet Size**-The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.

Packet Size

20ms	▼
10ms	
20ms	
30ms	
40ms	
50ms	
60ms	

**Voice Active Detector** - This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.

Voice Active Detector

Off	▼
Off	
On	

**Default SIP Account**

You can set SIP accounts (up to six groups) on SIP Account page. Use the drop down list to choose one of the profile names for the accounts as the default one for this phone setting.

**Play dial tone only when account registered** - Check this box to invoke the function.

**FXO Feature**

**Enable ISDN to VoIP (On-Net) Calls** – Check this box to make all the outgoing calls from ISDN line to be forwarded to receivers by Internet.

**Enable VoIP to ISDN (Off-Net) Calls** –Check this box to make all the incoming calls coming from Internet to be forwarded to receivers by ISDN line.

**Loop Through to Phone Port** – Choose this radio button to make all the calls controlled by traditional PSTN phone. It will tack effect only if MSN mapping ring port is not

configured. In addition, you can specify which port (both phone 1 and phone 2, phone 1 only or phone 2 only) will ring. **Loop Through to ISDN1-S0 Port** – Choose this radio button to make all the calls controlled by ISDN line.

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TON1, TOff1, TON2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TON1 and TON2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

Advance Settings >> ISDN2-TE

**Tone Settings**

Region: User Defined

	Low Freq (Hz)	High Freq (Hz)	T on 1 (msec)	T off 1 (msec)	T on 2 (msec)	T off 2 (msec)
<b>Dial tone</b>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">350</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">440</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>			
<b>Ringing tone</b>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">400</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">450</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">400</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">200</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">400</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">2000</span>
<b>Busy tone</b>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">400</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">375</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">375</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>
<b>Congestion tone</b>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0</span>					

**Volume Gain**

Mic Gain(1-10) 5

Speaker Gain(1-10) 5

**MISC**

Dial Tone Power Level 27

**Authentication PIN Code**

Check for ISDN to VoIP Calls 0000

Check for VoIP to ISDN Calls 0000

**DTMF**

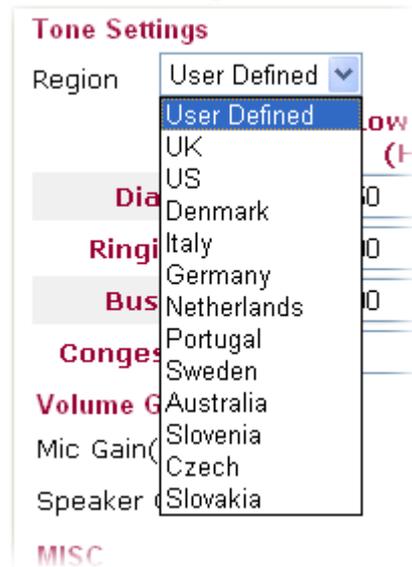
DTMF Mode InBand

Payload Type(RFC2833) 101

OK
Cancel

**Region**

Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.



Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

**Volume Gain**

**Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.

**MISC**

**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

**Authentication PIN Code**

**Check for ISDN to VoIP Calls** – Set a pin code for the router to authenticate which one is allowed to dial ISDN to VoIP call. The figure that you can type in this field is limited from three to eight with digits from zero to nine.

**Check for VoIP to ISDN Calls** - Set a pin code for the router to authenticate which one is allowed to dial VoIP to ISDN call. The figure that you can type in this field is limited from three to eight with digits from zero to nine.

**DTMP**

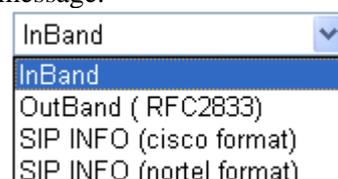
**DTMF mode** – There are four selections provided here:

**InBand:** Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone

**OutBand:** Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

**SIP INFO:** Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.

DTMF mode



**Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Choose a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.

### 3.11.4 Status

From this page, you can find codec, connection and other important call status for each port.

VoIP >> Status

**Status** Refresh Seconds:

Port	Status	Codec	PeerID	Elapse (hh:mm:ss)	Tx Pkts	Rx Pkts	Rx Losts	Rx Jitter (ms)	In Calls	Out Calls	Speaker Gain
Phone1	IDLE			00:00:00	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
Phone2	IDLE			00:00:00	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
ISDN1-B1	IDLE			00:00:00	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
ISDN1-B2	IDLE			00:00:00	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
ISDN2-B1	IDLE			00:00:00	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
ISDN2-B2	IDLE			00:00:00	0	0	0	0	0	0	5

**Log**

Date (mm-dd-yyyy)	Time (hh:mm:ss)	Duration (hh:mm:ss)	In/Out/Miss	Account ID	Peer ID
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-
00-00-0	00:00:00	00:00:00	-	-	-

#### Refresh Seconds

Specify the interval of refresh time to obtain the latest VoIP calling information. The information will update immediately when the Refresh button is clicked.

Refresh Seconds :

#### Port

It shows current connection status for the port of Phone1, Phone2, ISDN1 and ISDN2. The ISDN1/2 appears only when the router is equipped with ISDN interface. ISDN1 means B1 channel for the physical ISDN port; ISDN2 means B2 channel for the physical ISDN port. Be aware that ISDN1/2 port is available for the users living in Europe and using Vigor 2930VSn only. For other V models, only the status for VoIP1 and VoIP2 will be shown in this page.

#### Status

It shows the VoIP connection status.  
**IDLE** - Indicates that the VoIP function is idle.  
**HANG\_UP** - Indicates that the connection is not established (busy tone).  
**CONNECTING** - Indicates that the user is calling out.  
**WAIT\_ANS** - Indicates that a connection is launched and waiting for remote user's answer.

	<b>ALERTING</b> - Indicates that a call is coming.
	<b>ACTIVE</b> -Indicates that the VoIP connection is launched.
<b>Codec</b>	Indicates the voice codec employed by present channel.
<b>PeerID</b>	The present in-call or out-call peer ID (the format may be IP or Domain).
<b>Elapse</b>	The format is represented as hours:minutes:seconds.
<b>Tx Pkts</b>	Total number of transmitted voice packets during this connection session.
<b>Rx Pkts</b>	Total number of received voice packets during this connection session.
<b>Rx Losses</b>	Total number of lost packets during this connection session.
<b>Rx Jitter</b>	The jitter of received voice packets.
<b>In Calls</b>	The accumulating in-call times.
<b>Out Calls</b>	The accumulating out-call times.
<b>Speaker Gain</b>	The volume of present call.
<b>Log</b>	Display logs of VoIP calls.

## 3.12 ISDN

### 3.12.1 Basic Concept

ISDN means integrated services digital network that is an international communications standard for sending voice, video, and data over digital telephone lines or normal telephone wires.

Below shows the menu items for ISDN.



### 3.12.2 General Settings

This web page allows you to enable ISDN function.

[ISDN >> General Setup](#)

**ISDN Setup**

ISDN Port  Enable  Disable

Country Code

D-Channel Mode

ISDN1  Point-to-Point  Point-to-Multipoint

ISDN2  Point-to-Point  Point-to-Multipoint

Own Number

"Own Number" means that the router will tell the remote end the ISDN number when it's placing an outgoing call.

Goto [Phone Settings](#) to change ISDN TE->NT type.

Blocked MSN numbers for the router

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

Index	MSN numbers for the router	Mapping to Phone Ports	Phone CLIR/CLIP
1.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
2.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
3.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
4.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
5.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
6.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
7.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
8.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
9.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
10.	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0 <input type="text" value="Any"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

"MSN Numbers" means that the router is able to accept number-matched incoming calls. In addition, MSN service should be supported by the local ISDN network provider.

OK Cancel

**ISDN Port**

Click **Enable** to open the ISDN port and **Disable** to close it.

**Country Code**

For proper operation on your local ISDN network, you should choose the correct country code.

**D-Channel Mode**

It allows you to configure ISDN layer2 protocol as:  
**Point-to-Point** - Configure ISDN port to use static TEI (Terminal Endpoint Identifier).  
**Point-to-Multipoint** - Configure ISDN port to use Dynamic TEI.

**Own Number**

Enter your ISDN number that you got from ISDN service provider (To have such number, you have offer your request from ISDN service provider first). Every outgoing call will carry the number to the receiver.

**Blocked MSN Numbers for the router**

Enter the specified MSN number into the fields to prevent the router from dialing the specific MSN number

**MSN Numbers for the Router**

MSN Numbers mean that the router is able to accept only number-matched incoming calls. In addition, local ISDN network provider should support MSN services. The router

provides ten fields for MSN numbers. Note that MSN service must be acquired from your local telecom operators. By default, MSN function is disabled. If you leave the fields blank, all incoming calls will be accepted without number matching.

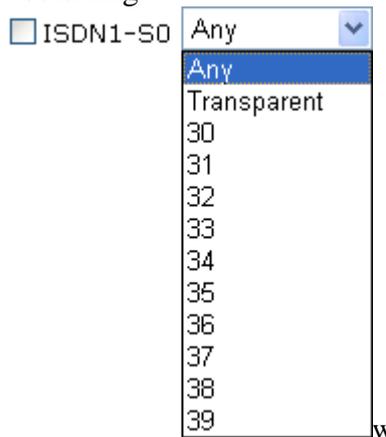
**1-10 fields** – Fill in the portion that is different with the own number.

For example, the own number is **1234567** and MSN numbers are **1234550**, **1234517** and **1234582** respectively. You can type in **1234567** in the field of own number. Fill in **50**, **17** and **67** on the fields of 1, 2 and 3 one by one without typing 12345.

### Mapping to Phone Ports

For loop through phone calls, you can assign Phone 1, Phone 2, ISDN1-S0 as ring ports if incoming calls correspond with settings on MSN number field.

There are ten internal lines (30-39) under ISDN1-S0 for you to configure as dedicated line. You can setup your ISDN phone with one of these 10 different internal MSN numbers. **Transparent** means MSN on TE port can connect to NT port without limitation on the number among 30 ~ 39. **Any** means all the phones under ISDN1-S0 would ring.



If you choose **Any** as ISDN-S0 port, when the router receives the incoming phone call with certain number for reaching ISDN-S0, all the phone sets connected to ISDN-S0 will ring at the same time.

### Phone CLIR/CLIP

CLIR means “Calling Line Identification Restriction”. If you choose this item, we will not let remote side see your phone number. Such function depends on environment that ISP offers to you. Usually, hidden telephone number is not permitted under many real circumstances.

CLIP means “Calling Line Identification Presentation”. Usually the router will send "Own Number" to the remote side. However **Own number** will restrict the router displaying only one number on remote side. Vigor2930 series can connect up to 6 phones at the same time. Therefore, if **CLIP** is selected, the **external MSN numbers that you setup will be displayed to remote side.**

## Application Example

You got ISDN numbers with **5972720~5972729** from your ISP, and you try to connect ISDN-TE port to ISDN network. Please refer to the following configuration.

Open **ISDN>> General Setup** and set as the following:

**ISDN >> General Setup**

**ISDN Setup**

ISDN Port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable	Blocked MSN numbers for the router 1. <input type="text"/> 2. <input type="text"/> 3. <input type="text"/> 4. <input type="text"/> 5. <input type="text"/>
Country Code	International	
D-Channel Mode		
ISDN1	<input type="radio"/> Point-to-Point <input checked="" type="radio"/> Point-to-Multipoint	
ISDN2	<input type="radio"/> Point-to-Point <input checked="" type="radio"/> Point-to-Multipoint	
Own Number	5972726	
"Own Number" means that the router will tell the remote end the ISDN number when it's placing an outgoing call.		
Goto <a href="#">Phone Settings</a> to change ISDN TE->NT type.		

Index	MSN numbers for the router	Mapping to Phone Ports	Phone CLIR/CLIP
1.	5972727	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0	Any <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
2.	5972728	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0	32 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
3.	5972729	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0	Transparent <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
4.	5972720	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone1 <input type="checkbox"/> Phone2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN1-S0	Any <input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

When remote user calls you by dialing **5972727**, the router will make Phone1 port ringing.

When remote user calls you by dialing **5972728**, the router will make ISDN phone under ISDN1-S0 port and configured with internal MSN number 32 ringing.

When remote user calls you by dialing **5972729**, the router will make ISDN phones under ISDN1-S0 port and configured with internal MSN number **5972729** ringing.

When remote user calls you by dialing **5972720**, the router will make all of ISDN phones under ISDN1-S0 port ringing.

When remote user calls you by dialing **5972722**, the router will make no phone ringing for the number is not specified in such page.

If you use Phone1 to dial an outgoing call: remote user will see the telephone number - 5972726 because CLIP is not checked.

If you use ISDN1-S0 with **MSN 32** to dial an outgoing call: remote user will see "Withheld Number" from the telephone display panel because Phone CLIR is checked.

If you use **ISDN1-S0 with MSN 5972729** to dial an outgoing call: remote user will see the number 5972729 because Phone CLIP is checked.

If you use **ISDN1-S0 without MSN Setup** to dial an outgoing call: remote user will see the number 5972720 because Phone CLIP is checked.

### 3.12.3 Dial to Single/Dual ISPs

Select **Dialing to a Single ISP** if you access the Internet via a single ISP.

ISDN >> Dialing to a Single ISP

**Single ISP**

<b>ISP Access Setup</b>	<b>PPP/MP Setup</b>
ISP Name <input type="text"/>	Link Type <input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/>
Dial Number <input type="text"/>	PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/>
Username <input type="text"/>	Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="180"/> second(s)
Password <input type="text"/>	<b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b>
<input type="checkbox"/> Require ISP callback (CBCP)	Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)
Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:	Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/>
=> <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>	

#### ISP Access Setup

**ISP Name** - Enter your ISP name such as Seednet, Hinet and so on.

**Dial Number** - Enter the ISDN access number provided by your ISP.

**Username** - Enter the username provided by your ISP.

**Password** - Enter the password provided by your ISP.

**Require ISP Callback (CBCP)** - If your ISP supports the callback function, check this box to activate the Callback Control Protocol during the PPP negotiation.

**Scheduler (1-15)** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the Internet access according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **3.8.2 Schedule** for detailed configuration.

#### PPP/MP Setup

**Link Type** - There are three link types provided here for different purpose. **Link Disable** disables the ISDN dial-out function. **Dialup 64Kbps** allows you to use one ISDN B channel for Internet access. **Dialup 128Kbps** allows you to use both ISDN B channels for Internet access. **Dialup BOD** (for detailed information of configuration, please refer to section **3.12.4**) stands for bandwidth-on-demand. The router will use only one B channel in low traffic situations. Once the single B channel bandwidth is fully used, the other B channel will be activated automatically through the dialup. For more detailed BOD parameter settings, please refer to the section of **Call Control**.

**PPP Authentication** - PAP only allows you to configure the PPP session to use the PAP protocol to negotiate the username and password with the ISP. **PAP or CHAP** is to configure the PPP session to use the PAP or CHAP protocols to negotiate the username and password with the ISP.

**Idle Timeout** - Idle timeout means the router will be disconnect after being idle for a preset amount of time. The default is 180 seconds. If you set the time to 0, the ISDN connection to the ISP will always remain on.

## IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)

In most environments, you should not change these settings as most ISPs provide a dynamic IP address for the router when it connects to the ISP. If your ISP provides a fixed IP address, check **Yes** and enter the IP address in the field of **Fixed IP Address**.

Select **Dialing to Dual ISPs** if you have more than one ISP. You will be able to dial to both ISPs at the same time. This is mainly for those ISPs that do not support Multiple-Link PPP (ML-PPP). In such cases, dialing to two ISPs can increase the bandwidth utilization of the ISDN channels to 128kbps data speed.

### ISDN >> Dialing to Dual ISPs

Dual ISP	
<b>Common Settings</b> 1. <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Dual ISPs Function 2. <input type="checkbox"/> Require ISP callback (CBCP)	<b>PPP/MP Setup</b> Link Type: <input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/> PPP Authentication: <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> Idle Timeout: <input type="text" value="180"/> second(s)
<b>Primary ISP Setup</b> ISP Name: <input type="text"/> Dial Number: <input type="text"/> Username: <input type="text"/> Password: <input type="text"/> <b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/>	<b>Secondary ISP Setup</b> ISP Name: <input type="text"/> Dial Number: <input type="text"/> Username: <input type="text" value="84005755@hinet.net"/> Password: <input type="text" value="....."/> <b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="OK"/>	

## Common Settings

**Enable Dual ISPs Function** - Check to enable the Dual ISPs function. **Require ISP Callback (CBCP)** -If your ISP supports the callback function, check this box to activate the Callback Control Protocol during the PPP negotiation.

## PPP/MP Setup

**Link Type** – There are three link types provided here for different purpose. **Link Disable** disables the ISDN dial-out function. **Dialup 128Kbps** allows you to use both ISDN B channels for Internet access. **Dialup BOD** (for detailed information of configuration, please refer to section 3.12.4) stands for bandwidth-on-demand. The router will use only one B channel in low traffic situations. Once the single B channel bandwidth is fully used, the other B channel will be activated automatically through the dialup.

**PPP Authentication** - PAP only allows you to configure the PPP session to use the PAP protocol to negotiate the username and password with the ISP. **PAP or CHAP** can configure the PPP session to use the PAP or CHAP protocols to negotiate the username and password with the ISP.

**Idle Timeout** - Idle timeout means the router will be disconnect after being idle for a preset amount of time. The default is 180 seconds. If you set the time to 0, the ISDN connection to the ISP will always remain on.

### Primary ISP Setup

**ISP Name** - Enter your ISP name.

**Dial Number** - Enter the ISDN access number provided by your ISP.

**Username** - Enter the username provided by your ISP.

**Password** - Enter the password provided by your ISP.

### IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) for primary ISP setup

In most environments, you should not change these settings as most ISPs provide a dynamic IP address for the router when it connects to the ISP. If your ISP provides a fixed IP address, check **Yes** and enter the IP address in the field of **Fixed IP Address**.

### Secondary ISP Setup)

**ISP Name** - Enter the secondary ISP name.

**Dial Number** - Enter the ISDN access number provided by the ISP.

**Username** - Enter the username provided by your ISP.

**Password** - Enter the password provided by your ISP.

### IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) for secondary ISP setup

In most environments, you should not change these settings as most ISPs provide a dynamic IP address for the router when it connects to the ISP. If your ISP provides a fixed IP address, check **Yes** and enter the IP address in the field of **Fixed IP Address**.

After entering the necessary settings and clicking **OK**, you will see **Goto ISDN Diagnostic** link appears on the bottom of the webpage. To have an ISDN connection, please click this link.

#### ISDN >> Dialing to a Single ISP

**Active Configuration**

<b>ISP Access Setup</b> ISP Name <input type="text"/> Dial Number <input type="text" value="30"/> Username <input type="text" value="vivian"/> Password <input type="password" value="••••••"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Require ISP callback Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup: => <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <b>&gt;&gt; <a href="#">Goto ISDN Diagnostic</a></b>	<b>PPP/MP Setup</b> Link Type <input type="text" value="Dialup 128Kbps"/> PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/> Idle Timeout 180 second(s) <b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b> Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) Fixed IP Address
--	--

Now, the system will guide you to click **Dial ISDN**. Wait for a moment after clicking the dial link. Then, a successful ISDN connection will be shown as the following.

## Online Status

System Status				System Uptime: 0:0:49			
<b>LAN Status</b>		Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1		Secondary DNS: 168.95.192.1			
IP Address		TX Packets		RX Packets			
192.168.1.1		419		360			
<b>WAN 1 Status</b>							
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time			
No	Ethernet		---	00:00:00			
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate		
---	---	0	0	0	0		
<b>WAN 2 Status</b>							
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time			
No	Ethernet		---	00:00:00			
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate	RX Packets	RX Rate		
---	---	0	0	0	0		
<b>ISDN Status</b>							
Channel	Active Connection	TX Pkts	TX Rate	RX Pkts	RX Rate	Up Time	AOC
B1	[192.168.225.200]	19	4	18	4	0:0:46	0
B2	[192.168.225.200]	13	3	14	3	0:0:43	0
D	UP						

### 3.12.4 Call Control

Some applications require that the router (only for the ISDN models) be remotely activated, or be able to dial up to the ISP via the ISDN interface. Vigor routers provide this feature by allowing user to make a phone call to the router and then ask it to dial up to the ISP. Accordingly, a teleworker can access the remote network to retrieve resources. Of course, a fixed IP address is required for WAN connection and some internal network resource has to be exposed for remote users, such as FTP, WWW.

#### ISDN >> Call Control

Call Control Setup			
Dial Retry	<input type="text" value="0"/>	times	Remote Activation <input type="text"/>
Dial Delay Interval	<input type="text" value="0"/>	second(s)	
PPP/MP Dial-Out Setup			
<b>Basic Setup</b>		<b>Bandwidth On Demand (BOD) Setup</b>	
Link Type	<input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/>	High Water Mark	<input type="text" value="7000"/> cps
PPP Authentication	<input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/>	High Water Time	<input type="text" value="30"/> second(s)
TCP Header Compression	<input type="text" value="None"/>	Low Water Mark	<input type="text" value="6000"/> cps
Idle Timeout	<input type="text" value="180"/> second(s)	Low Water Time	<input type="text" value="30"/> second(s)
<input type="button" value="OK"/>			

#### Call Control Setup

**Dial Retry** - It specifies the dial retry counts per triggered packet. A triggered packet is the packet whose destination is outside the local network. The default setting is no dial retry. If set to 5, for each triggered packet, the router will dial 5 times until it is connected to the ISP or remote access router.

**Dial Delay Interval** - It specifies the interval between dialup retries. By default, the interval is 0 second.

**Remote Activation** - It can help users who would like to access the server which is off the Internet in the head office.

To remotely make the server to be available on the Internet, i.e. make the router in the head office activating its Internet access either by dialing-up or starting broadband connection, users can make a regular phone call (the number is set in the Remote Activation field) to the router as signaling it for activation. The phone call will be soon disconnected once the router is on line.

Note that **Dialing to a Single ISP** should be pre-configured properly.

## Basic Setup

**Link Type** - Because ISDN has two B channels (64Kbps/per channel), you can specify whether you would like to have single B channel, two B channels or BOD (Bandwidth on Demand). Four options are available: Link Disable, Dialup 64Kbps, Dialup 128Kbps, Dialup BOD.

Link Type



**PPP Authentication** - It specifies the PPP authentication method for PPP/MP connections. Normally you can set it to PAP/CHAP for better compatibility.

**TCP Header Compression - VJ Compression:** It is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally it is set to Yes to improve bandwidth utilization.

**Idle Timeout** - Because our ISDN link type is **Dial On Demand**, the connection will be initiated only when needed.

## Bandwidth-On-Demand (BOD) Setup

Bandwidth-On-Demand is for Multiple-Link PPP (ML-PPP or MP). The parameters are only applied when you set the **Link Type** to **Dialup BOD**. The ISDN usually use one B channel to access the Internet or remote network when you choose the Dialup BOD link type. The router will use the parameters here to decide on when you activate/drop the additional B channel. Note that **cps** (characters-per-second) measures the total link utilization.

**High Water Mark and High Water Time** - These parameters specify the situation in which the second channel will be activated. With the first connected channel, if its utilization exceeds the High Water Mark and such a channel is being used over the High Water Time, the additional channel will be activated. Thus, the total link speed will be 128kbps (two B channels).

**Low Water Mark and Low Water Time** - These parameters specify the situation in which the second channel will be dropped. In terms of the two B channels, if their utilization is under the Low Water Mark and these two channels are being used over the High Water Time, the additional channel will be dropped. As a result, the total link speed will be 64kbps (one B channel).

## 3.13 Wireless LAN

This function is used for “n” models only.

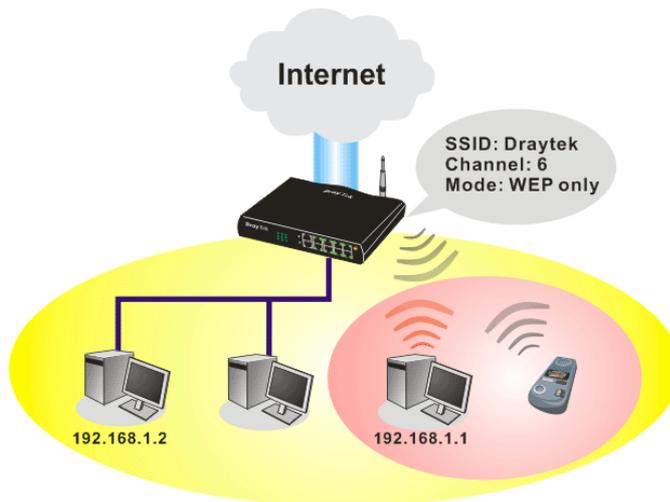
### 3.13.1 Basic Concepts

Over recent years, the market for wireless communications has enjoyed tremendous growth. Wireless technology now reaches or is capable of reaching virtually every location on the surface of the earth. Hundreds of millions of people exchange information every day via wireless communication products. The Vigor “n” model, a.k.a. Vigor wireless router, is designed for maximum flexibility and efficiency of a small office/home. Any authorized staff can bring a built-in WLAN client PDA or notebook into a meeting room for conference without laying a clot of LAN cable or drilling holes everywhere. Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

The Vigor wireless routers are equipped with a wireless LAN interface compliant with the standard IEEE 802.11n protocol. To boost its performance further, the Vigor Router is also loaded with advanced wireless technology to lift up data rate up to 300 Mbps\*. Hence, you can finally smoothly enjoy stream music and video.

**Note:** \* The actual data throughput will vary according to the network conditions and environmental factors, including volume of network traffic, network overhead and building materials.

In an Infrastructure Mode of wireless network, Vigor wireless router plays a role as an Access Point (AP) connecting to lots of wireless clients or Stations (STA). All the STAs will share the same Internet connection via Vigor wireless router. The **General Settings** will set up the information of this wireless network, including its SSID as identification, located channel etc.



### Security Overview

**Real-time Hardware Encryption:** Vigor Router is equipped with a hardware AES encryption engine so it can apply the highest protection to your data without influencing user experience.

**Complete Security Standard Selection:** To ensure the security and privacy of your wireless communication, we provide several prevailing standards on market.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a legacy method to encrypt each frame transmitted via radio using either a 64-bit or 128-bit key. Usually access point will preset a set of four keys and it will communicate with each station using only one out of the four keys.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), the most dominating security mechanism in industry, is separated into two categories: WPA-personal or called WPA Pre-Share Key (WPA/PSK), and WPA-Enterprise or called WPA/802.1x.

In WPA-Personal, a pre-defined key is used for encryption during data transmission. WPA applies Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption while WPA2 applies AES. The WPA-Enterprise combines not only encryption but also authentication.

Since WEP has been proved vulnerable, you may consider using WPA for the most secure connection. You should select the appropriate security mechanism according to your needs. No matter which security suite you select, they all will enhance the over-the-air data protection and /or privacy on your wireless network. The Vigor wireless router is very flexible and can support multiple secure connections with both WEP and WPA at the same time.

**Separate the Wireless and the Wired LAN- WLAN Isolation** enables you to isolate your wireless LAN from wired LAN for either quarantine or limit access reasons. To isolate means neither of the parties can access each other. To elaborate an example for business use, you may set up a wireless LAN for visitors only so they can connect to Internet without hassle of the confidential information leakage. For a more flexible deployment, you may add filters of MAC addresses to isolate users' access from wired LAN.

**Manage Wireless Stations - Station List** will display all the station in your wireless network and the status of their connection.

Below shows the menu items for Wireless LAN.



### 3.13.2 General Setup

By clicking the **General Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the SSID and the wireless channel. Please refer to the following figure for more information.

Wireless LAN >> General Setup

**General Setting ( IEEE 802.11 )**

Enable Wireless LAN

Mode : Mixed(11b+11g+11n) ▼

---

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup: , , ,

---

	Enable	Hide SSID	SSID	Isolate LAN	Member
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">DrayTek</span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Hide SSID:** Prevent SSID from being scanned.  
**Isolate Member:** Wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID cannot access for each other.  
**Isolate LAN:** Wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID cannot access wired PCs on LAN.

---

Channel: Channel 6, 2437MHz ▼ Long Preamble:   
 Long Preamble: necessary for some old 802.11 b devices only(lower performance)

---

Packet-OVERDRIVE™  
 Tx Burst

**Note:**  
 The same technology must also be supported in clients to boost WLAN performance.

OK
Cancel

#### Enable Wireless LAN

Check the box to enable wireless function.

#### Mode

At present, the router can connect to Mixed (11b+11g), 11g Only, 11b Only, Mixed (11g+11n), 11n Only and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mix (11b+11g+11n) mode.

Mixed(11b+11g+11n) ▼  
 11b Only  
 11g Only  
 11n Only  
 Mixed(11b+11g)  
 Mixed(11g+11n)  
Mixed(11b+11g+11n)

#### Index(1-15)

Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this filed is blank and the function will always work.

#### Hide SSID

Check it to prevent from wireless sniffing and make it harder for unauthorized clients or STAs to join your

wireless LAN. Depending on the wireless utility, the user may only see the information except SSID or just cannot see any thing about Vigor wireless router while site surveying. The system allows you to set four sets of SSID for different usage. In default, the first set of SSID will be enabled. You can hide it for your necessity.

**SSID**

Means the identification of the wireless LAN. SSID can be any text numbers or various special characters. The default SSID is "DrayTek". We suggest you to change it.

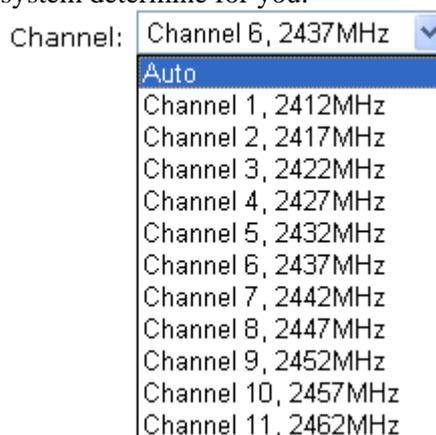
**Isolate**

**LAN** – Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID cannot access wired PCs on LAN.

**Member** –Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.

**Channel**

Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.



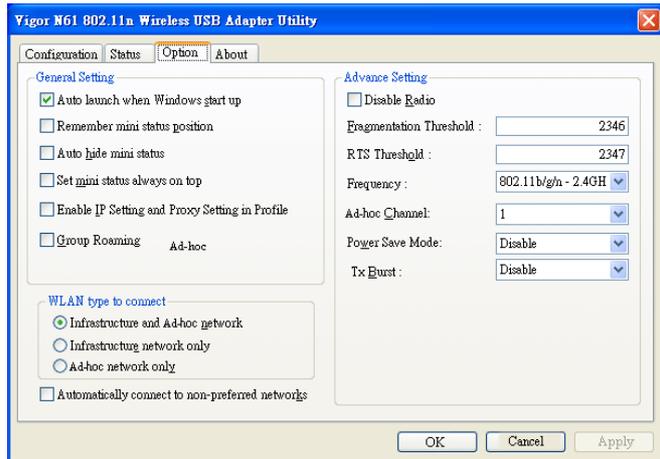
**Long Preamble**

This option is to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. Check it to use **Long Preamble** if needed to communicate with this kind of devices.

**Packet-OVERDRIVE**

This feature can enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%\* more (by checking **Tx Burst**). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. That is, the wireless client must support this feature and invoke the function, too.

**Note:** Vigor N61 wireless adapter supports this function. Therefore, you can use and install it into your PC for matching with Packet-OVERDRIVE (refer to the following picture of Vigor N61 wireless utility window, choose **Enable** for activating TxBurst).



**Note:** \* means the real transmission rate depends on the environment of the network.

### 3.13.3 Security

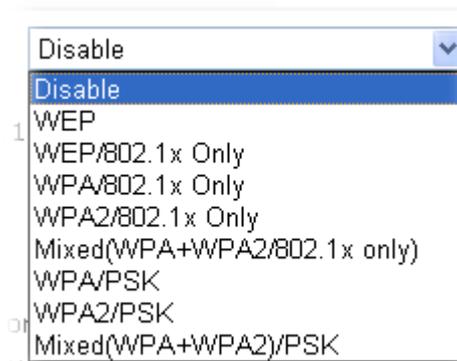
This page allows you to set security with different modes for SSID 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. After configuring the correct settings, please click **OK** to save and invoke it.

By clicking the **Security Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the settings of WEP and WPA.

SSID 1	SSID 2	SSID 3	SSID 4
Mode: <span style="float: right;">Disable ▾</span>			
Set up <b>RADIUS Server</b> if 802.1x is enabled.			
<b>WPA:</b>			
Encryption Mode:		TKIP for WPA/AES for WPA2	
Pre-Shared Key(PSK):		<input type="text" value="*****"/>	
Type 8~63 ASCII character or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfgs01a2..." or "0x655abcd....".			
<b>WEP:</b>			
Encryption Mode:		64-Bit ▾	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1 :		<input type="text" value="*****"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Key 2 :		<input type="text" value="*****"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Key 3 :		<input type="text" value="*****"/>	
<input type="radio"/> Key 4 :		<input type="text" value="*****"/>	
<b>For 64 bit WEP key</b>			
Type 5 ASCII character or 10 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "AB312" or "0x4142333132".			
<b>For 128 bit WEP key</b>			
Type 13 ASCII character or 26 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "0123456789abc" or "0x30313233343536373839414243".			
<input type="button" value="OK"/>		<input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

**Mode**

There are several modes provided for you to choose.



**Disable** - Turn off the encryption mechanism.

**WEP**-Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key should be entered in WEP Key.

**WEP/802.1x Only** - Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**WPA/802.1x Only**- Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**WPA2/802.1x Only**- Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only)** - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**WPA/PSK**-Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

**WPA2/PSK**-Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

**Mixed (WPA+ WPA2)/PSK** - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key should be entered in PSK. Default Pre-Shared Key (PSK) is provided and stated on the label pasted on the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.

## WPA

The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either **8~63** ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

**Type** - Select from Mixed (WPA+WPA2) or WPA2 only.

**Pre-Shared Key (PSK)** - Either **8~63** ASCII characters, such as 012345678..(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

## WEP

**64-Bit** - For 64 bits WEP key, either **5** ASCII characters, such as 12345 (or 10 hexadecimal digitals leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445.)

**128-Bit** - For 128 bits WEP key, either **13** ASCII characters, such as ABCDEFGHIJKLM (or 26 hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445464748494A4B4C4D).

Encryption Mode:



A dropdown menu with a blue border. The top part shows '64-Bit' with a downward arrow. Below it, a list is open showing '64-Bit' (highlighted in blue) and '128-Bit'.

All wireless devices must support the same WEP encryption bit size and have the same key. **Four keys** can be entered here, but only one key can be selected at a time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. Check the key you wish to use.

### 3.13.4 Access Control

For additional security of wireless access, the **Access Control** facility allows you to restrict the network access right by controlling the wireless LAN MAC address of client. Only the valid MAC address that has been configured can access the wireless LAN interface. By clicking the **Access Control**, a new web page will appear, as depicted below, so that you could edit the clients' MAC addresses to control their access rights.

**Access Control** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Policy : Activate MAC address filter ▼

Enable Mac Address Filter

SSID 1     SSID 2     SSID 3     SSID 4

---

**MAC Address Filter**

Index	Attribute	MAC Address
<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 100%; height: 100%;"></div>		

Client's MAC Address :  :  :  :  :  :

Attribute :

s: Isolate the station from LAN

**Policy**

Select to enable any one of the following policy.

**Activate MAC address filter-** Allow to set MAC address list for accessing Access Point. PCs with MAC address not listed above cannot access AP. In addition, selected station with MAC address listed above can be isolated from LAN by checking Isolate the station from LAN.

**Blocked MAC address filter-** Allow to set MAC address list for denying access AP. However, stations with MAC address not listed above are allowed to access AP.

Policy : 
 Activate MAC address filter ▼  
 Activate MAC address filter  
 Blocked MAC address filter

**Enable Mac Access Filter**

Select to enable the MAC Address filter for wireless LAN identified with SSID 1 to 4 respectively. All the clients (expressed by MAC addresses) listed in the box can be grouped under different wireless LAN. For example, they can be grouped under SSID 1 and SSID 2 at the same time if you check SSID 1 and SSID 2.

**MAC Address Filter**

Display all MAC addresses that are edited before.

**Client's MAC Address** - Manually enter the MAC address of wireless client.

**Attribute**

**s: Isolate the station from LAN** - select to isolate the wireless connection of the wireless client of the MAC address from LAN.

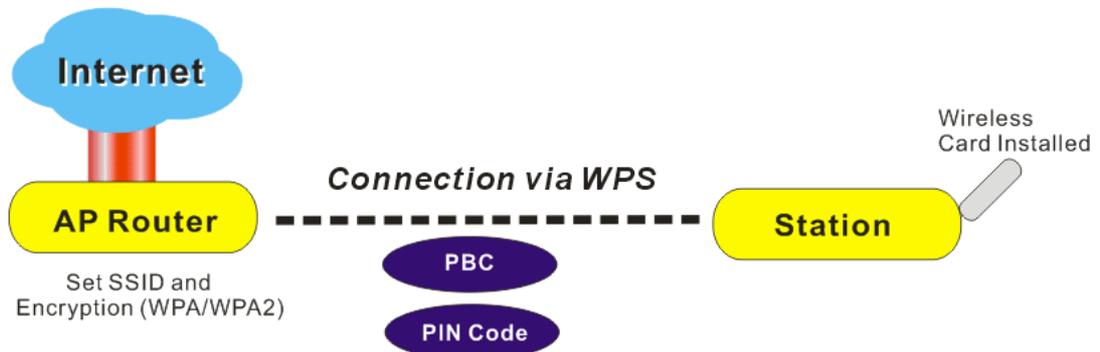
**Add**

Add a new MAC address into the list.

<b>Delete</b>	Delete the selected MAC address in the list.
<b>Edit</b>	Edit the selected MAC address in the list.
<b>Cancel</b>	Give up the access control set up.
<b>OK</b>	Click it to save the access control list.
<b>Clear All</b>	Clean all entries in the MAC address list.

### 3.13.5 WPS

**WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)** provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.

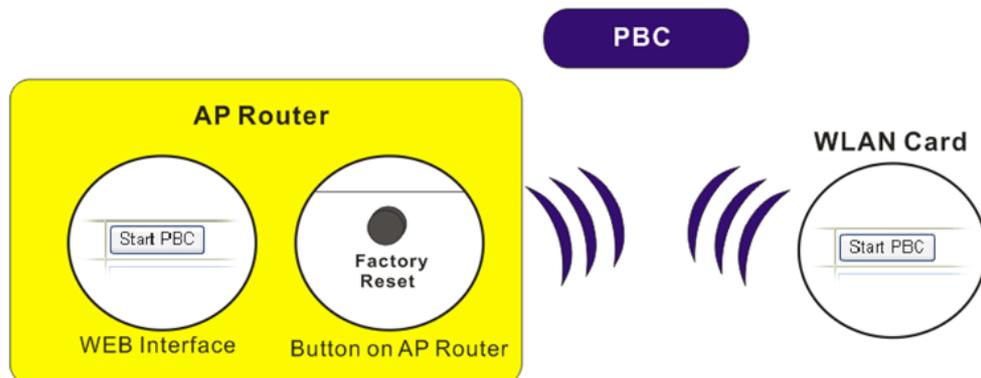


**Note:** Such function is available for the wireless station with WPS supported.

It is the simplest way to build connection between wireless network clients and vigor router. Users do not need to select any encryption mode and type any long encryption passphrase to setup a wireless client every time. He/she only needs to press a button on wireless client, and WPS will connect for client and router automatically.

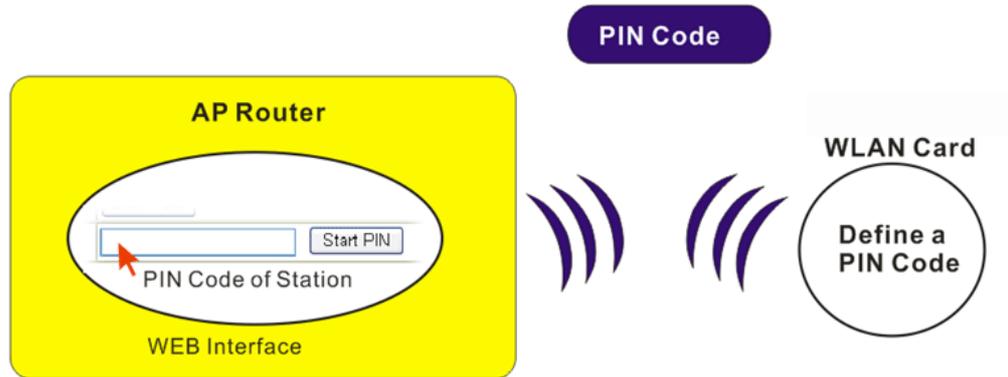
There are two methods to do network connection through WPS between AP and Stations: pressing the **Start PBC** button or using **PIN Code**.

- On the side of Vigor 2930 series which served as an AP, press **Factory Reset** button once on the front panel of the router or click **Start PBC** on web configuration interface. On the side of a station with network card installed, press **Start PBC** button of network card.

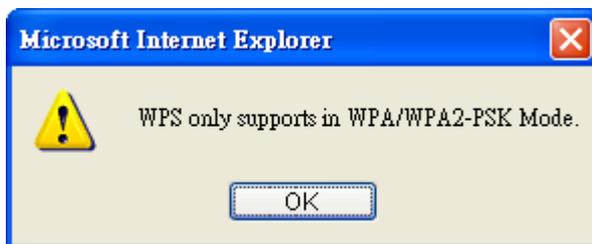


- If you want to use PIN code, you have to know the PIN code specified in wireless client. Then provide the PIN code of the wireless client you wish to connect to the

vigor router.



For WPS is supported in WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode, if you do not choose such mode in **Wireless LAN>>Security**, you will see the following message box.



Please click **OK** and go back **Wireless LAN>>Security** to choose WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode and access WPS again.

Below shows **Wireless LAN>>WPS** web page.

**Wireless LAN >> WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)**

Enable WPS 

**Wi-Fi Protected Setup Information**

<b>WPS Status</b>	Configured
<b>SSID</b>	DrayTek
<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Disable

**Device Configure**

<b>Configure via PBC</b>	<input type="button" value="Start PBC"/>
<b>Configure via Client PinCode</b>	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Start PIN"/>

Status: The Authentication Mode is NOT WPA/WPA2 PSK!!

**Note:** WPS can help your wireless client automatically connect to the Access point.

: WPS is Disabled.

: WPS is Enabled.

: Waiting for WPS requests from wireless client.

**Enable WPS**

Check this box to enable WPS setting.

**WPS Status**

Display related system information for WPS. If the wireless security (encryption) function of the router is properly configured, you can see 'Configured' message here.

**SSID**

Display the SSID1 of the router. WPS is supported by SSID1 only.

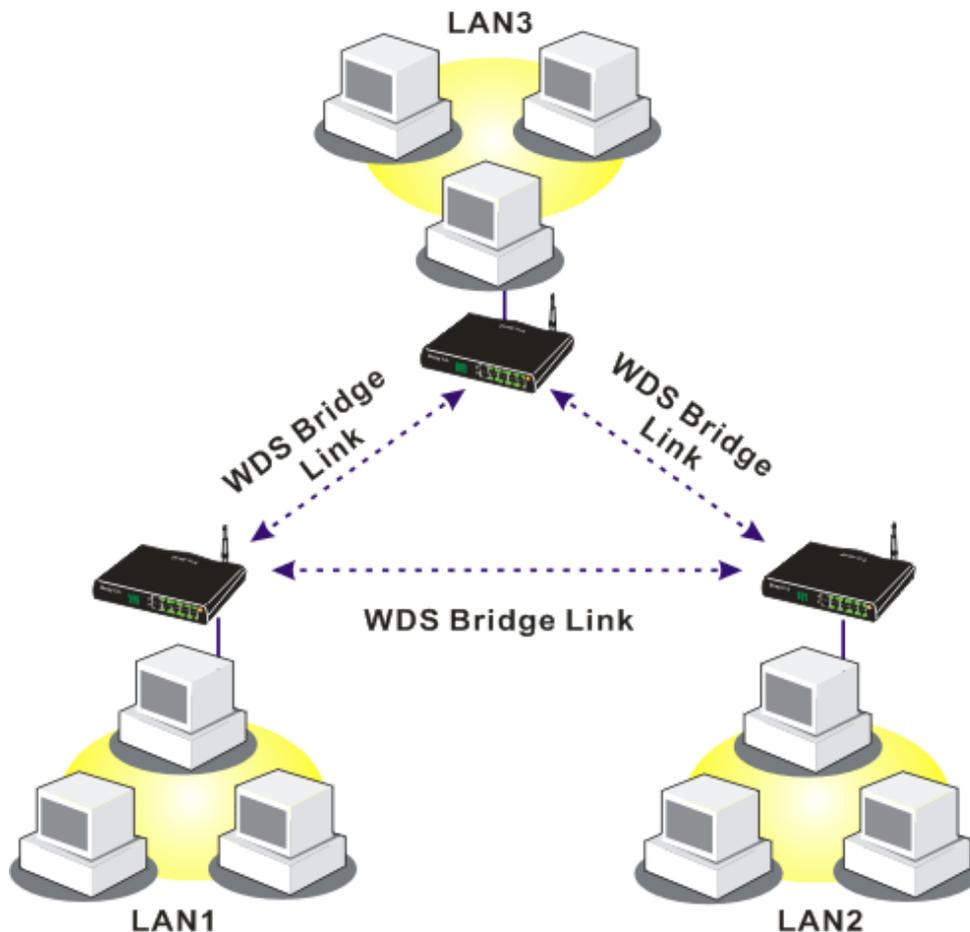
<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Display current authentication mode of the router. Only WPA2/PSK and WPA/PSK support WPS.
<b>Configure via Push Button</b>	Click <b>Start PBC</b> to invoke Push-Button style WPS setup procedure. The router will wait for WPS requests from wireless clients about two minutes. The WLAN LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)
<b>Configure via Client PinCode</b>	Please input the PIN code specified in wireless client you wish to connect, and click <b>Start PIN</b> button. The WLAN LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)

### 3.13.6 WDS

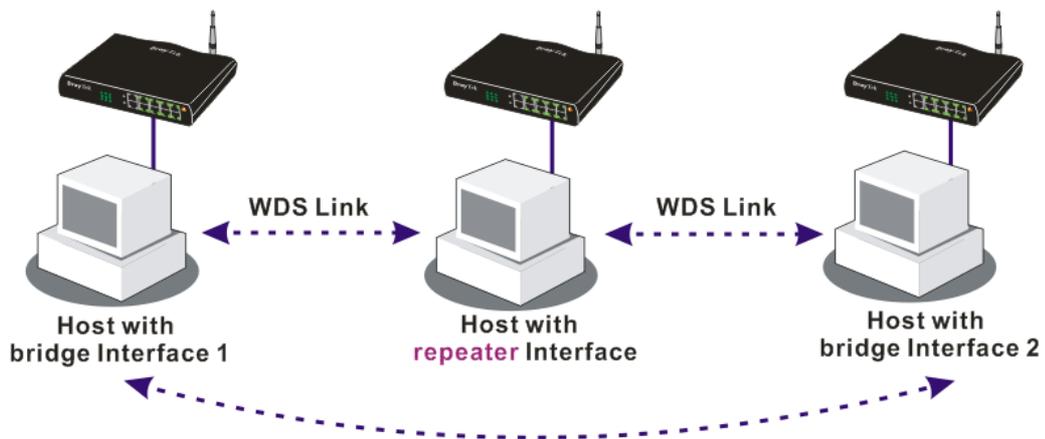
WDS means Wireless Distribution System. It is a protocol for connecting two access points (AP) wirelessly. Usually, it can be used for the following application:

- Provide bridge traffic between two LANs through the air.
- Extend the coverage range of a WLAN.

To meet the above requirement, two WDS modes are implemented in Vigor router. One is **Bridge**, the other is **Repeater**. Below shows the function of WDS-bridge interface:

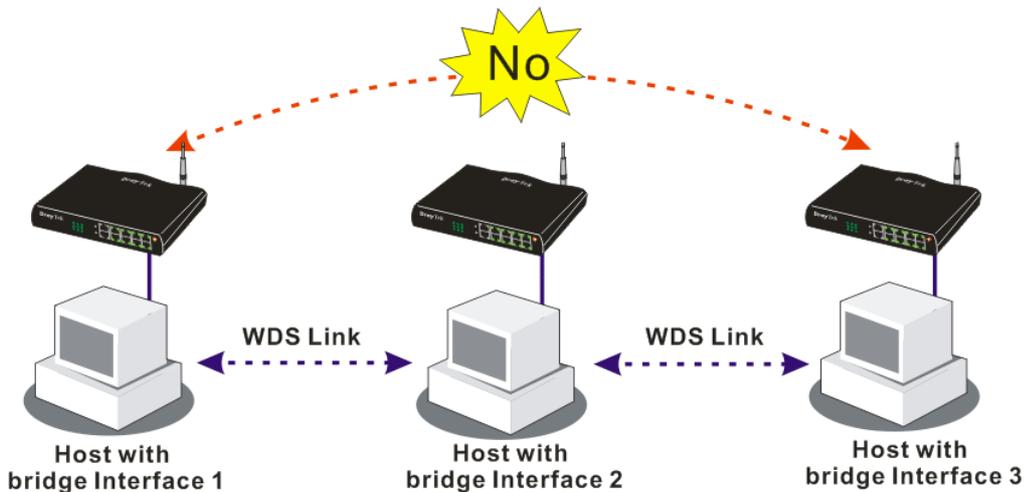


The application for the WDS-Repeater mode is depicted as below:



The major difference between these two modes is that: while in **Repeater** mode, the packets received from one peer AP can be repeated to another peer AP through WDS links. Yet in **Bridge** mode, packets received from a WDS link will only be forwarded to local wired or wireless hosts. In other words, only Repeater mode can do WDS-to-WDS packet forwarding.

In the following examples, hosts connected to Bridge 1 or 3 can communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 2 through WDS links. However, hosts connected to Bridge 1 CANNOT communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 3 through Bridge 2.



Click **WDS** from **Wireless LAN** menu. The following page will be shown.

**WDS Settings**
| [Set to Factory Default](#) |

---

**Mode:** Bridge

---

**Security:**  
 Disable    WEP    Pre-shared Key

---

**WEP:**  
 Use the same WEP key set in [Security Settings](#).

---

**Pre-shared Key:**  
 Type:  
 DrayTek WPA    WPA    WPA2  
 Key :

Type 8~63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfigs01a2..." or "0x655abcd....".

**Bridge**

Enable   Peer MAC Address

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								

**Note:** Disable unused links to get better performance.

---

**Repeater**

Enable   Peer MAC Address

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	:	<input type="text"/>								

---

**Access Point Function:**  
 Enable    Disable

---

**Status:**  
 Send "Hello" message to peers.

Link Status

**Note:** The status is valid only when the peer also supports this function.

OK
Cancel

**Mode**

Choose the mode for WDS setting. **Disable** mode will not invoke any WDS setting. **Bridge** mode is designed to fulfill the first type of application. **Repeater** mode is for the second one.

**Mode:**

Disable
Disable
Bridge
Repeater

**Security**

There are three types for security, **Disable**, **WEP** and **Pre-shared key**. The setting you choose here will make the following WEP or Pre-shared key field valid or not. Choose one of the types for the router.

**WEP**

If you checked the box of **Use the same WEP key ...**, you do not need to choose 64-bit or 128-bit as the Encryption Mode. If you do not check that box, you can set the WEP key now in this page.

**Pre-shared Key**

**Type** – There are three types for you to choose. **DrayTek WPA** can be used for all DrayTek wireless routers like Vigor2700, Vigor2800, Vigor2820, and etc., except for other brand's wireless routers. **WPA** and **WPA2** are used for WDS devices (e.g., AP700). For example, if you have a wireless AP and a Vigor2820n wireless router, you can set the

encryption mode as WPA or WPA2 to establish your WDS system between AP and the router.

**Key** - Type 8 ~ 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by "0x".

**Bridge**

If you choose Bridge as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Yet please disable the unused link to get better performance. If you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check **Enable** box in the front of the MAC address after typing.

**Repeater**

If you choose Repeater as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Similarly, if you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check **Enable** box in the front of the MAC address after typing.

**Access Point Function**

Click **Enable** to make this router serving as an access point; click **Disable** to cancel this function.

**Status**

It allows user to send "hello" message to peers. Yet, it is valid only when the peer also supports this function.

### 3.13.7 AP Discovery

Vigor router can scan all regulatory channels and find working APs in the neighborhood. Based on the scanning result, users will know which channel is clean for usage. Also, it can be used to facilitate finding an AP for a WDS link. Notice that during the scanning process (about 5 seconds), no client is allowed to connect to Vigor.

This page is used to scan the existence of the APs on the wireless LAN. Yet, only the AP which is in the same channel of this router can be found. Please click **Scan** to discover all the connected APs.

[Wireless LAN >> Access Point Discovery](#)

**Access Point List**

BSSID	Channel	SSID

See [Statistics](#).

**Note:** During the scanning process (~5 seconds), no station is allowed to connect with the router.

---

**Add to [WDS Settings](#) :**

AP's MAC address  :  :  :  :  :

      Bridge       Repeater

If you want the found AP applying the WDS settings, please type in the AP's MAC address on the bottom of the page and click Bridge or Repeater. Next, click **Add to**. Later, the MAC address of the AP will be added to Bridge or Repeater field of WDS settings page.

### 3.13.8 Station List

**Station List** provides the knowledge of connecting wireless clients now along with its status code. There is a code summary below for explanation. For convenient **Access Control**, you can select a WLAN station and click **Add to Access Control** below.

Station List

Status	MAC Address
--------	-------------

**Status Codes :**  
C: Connected, No encryption.  
E: Connected, WEP.  
P: Connected, WPA.  
A: Connected, WPA2.  
B: Blocked by Access Control.  
N: Connecting.  
F: Fail to pass 802.1X or WPA/PSK authentication.

**Note:** After a station connects to the router successfully, it may be turned off without notice. In that case, it will still be on the list until the connection expires.

---

**Add to Access Control :**

Client's MAC address  :  :  :  :  :

**Refresh**

Click this button to refresh the status of station list.

**Add**

Click this button to add current selected MAC address into **Access Control**.

### 3.13.9 Rate Control

This page allows you to control the upload and download rate of each wireless client (station) and SSID1-4. Please check the box of **Enable** to invoke this setting. The range for the rate is between 100 ~ 100,000 kbps.

Wireless LAN >> Rate Control

**Station Rate Control**

Enable

Upload Rate :  Kbps

Download Rate :  Kbps

**Note:**

1. Range: 100~100,000 Kbps, Increment: 100 Kbps.
2. The specified rates are applied to each associated wireless client.

**SSID Rate Control**

	Enable	Upload	Download
SSID 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps
SSID 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps
SSID 3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps
SSID 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps	<input type="text" value="100000"/> kbps

**Note:**

1. Range: 100~100,000 Kbps, Increment: 100 Kbps.
2. The specified rates are shared by all clients associate with the same SSID.

OK Cancel

SSID rate control controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection.

**Enable** Check **Enable** for typing upload and download rate.

**Upload** Type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps.

**Download** Type the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.

### 3.13.10 Web Portal Log-in

This page allows you to specify an URL for accessing into or display a message when a remote user connects to Internet through this router. No matter what purpose of the wireless client is, he/she will be forced into the URL configured here while trying to access into the Internet or the desired web page through this router. That is, a company which wants to have an advertisement for its products to the users, can specify the URL in this page to reach its goal.

Web Portal Log-in

Specify an URL or short message that you want to show after user connected to your wireless.

Disable

Redirect to URL:  
  
User's first HTTP request will be redirected to the URL above.  
Ex: http://www.draytek.com/online.htm or  
https://www.YourBank.com/

Show the message:

The message above will be shown in wireless user's browser for 5 seconds and then redirect to the original web site specified. (126 characters at most)  
Ex: Welcome to Vigorous Wireless~~~~~  
or <B> Welcome~~~~~ </B>

OK Cancel

**Disable**

Click this button to close this function.

**Redirect to URL**

Any user who wants to access into Internet through this router will be redirected to the URL specified here first. It is a useful method for the purpose of advertisement. For example, force the wireless user(s) in hotel to access into the web page that the hotel wants the user(s) to visit.

**Show the message**

Type words or sentences here. The message will be displayed on the screen for several seconds when the wireless users access into the web page through the router.

### 3.14 SSL VPN

An SSL VPN (Secure Sockets Layer virtual private network) is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser.

There are two benefits that SSL VPN provides:

- It is not necessary for users to preinstall VPN client software for executing SSL VPN connection.
- There are less restrictions for the data encrypted through SSL VPN in comparing with traditional VPN.



#### 3.14.1 General Setup

This page determines the general configuration for SSL VPN Server and SSL Tunnel.

SSL VPN General Setup

<b>Port</b>	<input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443)
<b>Server Certificate</b>	<input type="text" value="self-signed"/> ▼
<b>Encryption Key Algorithm</b>	
<input type="radio"/>	High - AES(128 bits) and 3DES
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Default - RC4(128 bits)
<input type="radio"/>	Low - DES

**Note:** The settings will act on all SSL applications.

**Port** Such port is set for SSL VPN server. It will not affect the HTTPS Port configuration set in **System Maintenance>>Management**. In general, the default setting is 443.

**Server Certificate** When the client does not set any certificate, default certificate will be used for HTTPS and SSL VPN server. Choose any one of the user-defined certificates from the drop down list if users set several certificates previously. Otherwise, choose **Self-signed** to use the router's built-in default certificate. The default certificate can be used in SSL VPN server and HTTPS Web Proxy.

**Encryption Key Algorithm** Choose the encryption level for the data connection in SSL VPN server.

### 3.14.2 SSL Web Proxy

SSL Web Proxy will allow the remote users to access the internal web sites over SSL.

SSL Web Proxy Servers Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	Name	URL	Active
<a href="#">1.</a>			x
<a href="#">2.</a>			x
<a href="#">3.</a>			x
<a href="#">4.</a>			x
<a href="#">5.</a>			x
<a href="#">6.</a>			x
<a href="#">7.</a>			x
<a href="#">8.</a>			x
<a href="#">9.</a>			x
<a href="#">10.</a>			x

**Name** Display the name of the profile that you create.

**URL** Display the URL.

**Active** Display current status (active or inactive) of such profile.

Click number link under Index filed to set detailed configuration.

**Profile Index : 1**

Name	<input type="text"/>
URL	<input type="text"/>
Host IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Access Method	<input type="button" value="Disable"/> <input type="button" value="Secured Port Redirection"/> <input type="button" value="SSL"/>

**Note:** URL format must be **http://ip:port/directory**.

<b>Name</b>	Type name of the profile.
<b>URL</b>	Type the address (function variation or IP address) or path of the proxy server.
<b>Host IP Address</b>	If you type function variation as URL, you have to type corresponding IP address in this field. Such field must match with URL setting.
<b>Access Method</b>	<p>There are three modes for you to choose</p> <p><b>Disable</b> – the profile will be inactive. If you choose <b>Disable</b>, all the web proxy profile appeared under VPN remote dial-in web page will disappear.</p> <p><b>Secured Port Redirection</b> – such technique applies private port mapping to random WAN port. There are two restrictions for proxy web server for such selection: 1) it is only used for WAN to LAN access, the web server must be configured behind vigor router; 2) web server gateway must be indicated to vigor router. In addition, users must execute “Connect” manually in SSL Client Portal page.</p> <p><b>SSL</b> – if you choose such selection, web proxy over SSL will be applied for VPN.</p>

### 3.14.3 User Account

For SSL VPN, identity authentication and power management are implemented through deploying user accounts. Therefore, the user account for SSL VPN must be set together with remote dial-in user web page. Such menu item will guide to access into **VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-in user**.

Remote Access User Accounts: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Index	User	Status	Index	User	Status
<a href="#">1.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">17.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">2.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">18.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">3.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">19.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">4.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">20.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">5.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">21.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">6.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">22.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">7.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">23.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">8.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">24.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">9.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">25.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">10.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">26.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">11.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">27.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">12.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">28.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">13.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">29.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">14.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">30.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">15.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">31.</a>	???	X
<a href="#">16.</a>	???	X	<a href="#">32.</a>	???	X

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >> [Next](#) >>

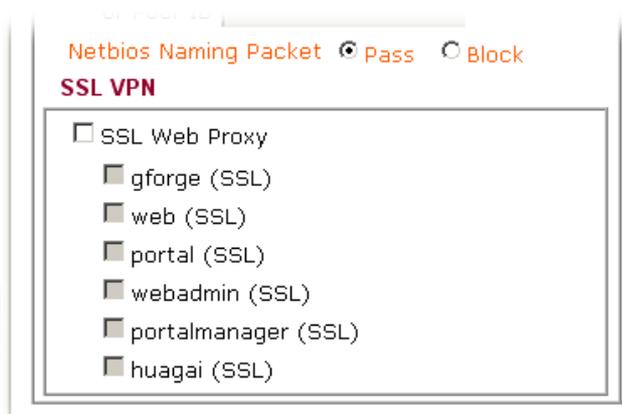
You can find out the link of Set SSL Web Proxy on the profile setting page. If you haven't set any SSL Web Proxy Profile in **SSL VPN>> SSL Web Proxy** web page, there is no check box but a link appeared below.

However, if you have set several SSL Web Proxy Profiles in **SSL VPN>> SSL Web Proxy** web page:

SSL Web Proxy Servers Profiles: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

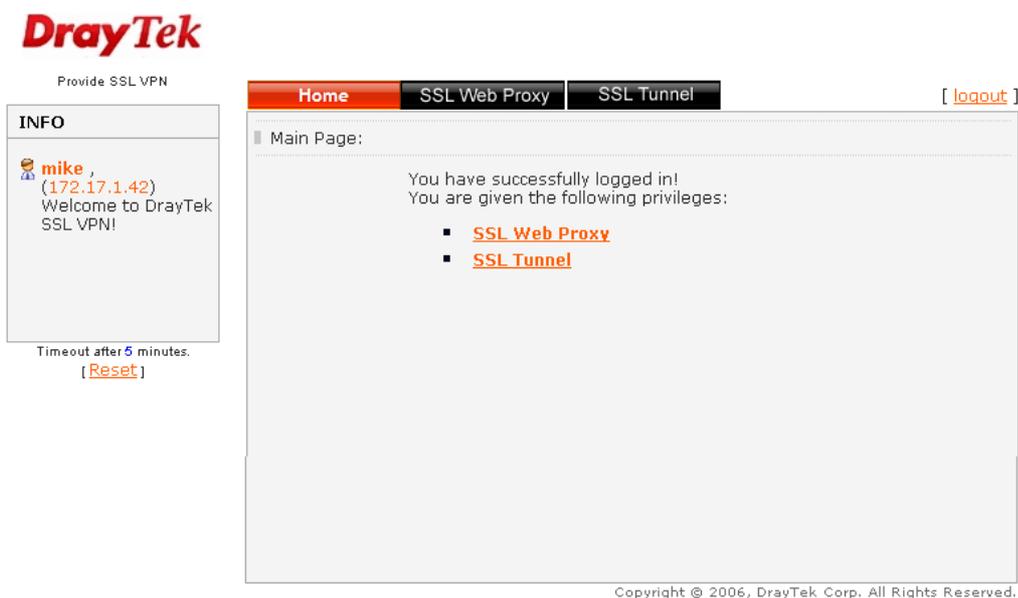
Index	Name	URL	Active
<a href="#">1.</a>	gforge	http://swm.draytek.com	v
<a href="#">2.</a>	web	http://www.draytek.com.cn	v
<a href="#">3.</a>	portal	http://www.vigorpro.com	v
<a href="#">4.</a>	webadmin	http://www.draytek.com.cn/admin	v
<a href="#">5.</a>	portalmanager	http://www.vigorpro.com/manager	v
<a href="#">6.</a>	huagai	http://www.huagai.com.cn	v
<a href="#">7.</a>			x
<a href="#">8.</a>			x
<a href="#">9.</a>			x
<a href="#">10.</a>			x

The SSL Web Proxy profile names will be displayed (together with check box) as shown below.



### 3.14.4 Online User Status

If you have finished the configuration of SSL Web Proxy (server), users can find out corresponding settings when they access into Draytek SSL VPN portal interface.



Next, users can open **SSL VPN>> Online Status** to view logging status of SSL VPN.

Refresh Seconds :

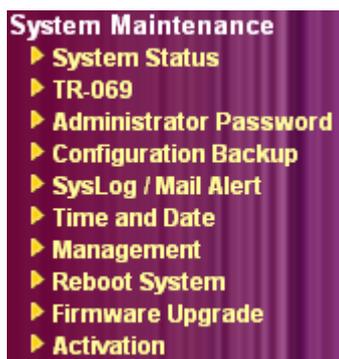
Active User	Host IP	Time out(seconds)	Action
caesar	172.17.1.42	292	<input type="button" value="Drop"/>

- Active User**                      Display current user who visit SSL VPN server.
- Host IP**                              Display the IP address for the host.
- Time out**                              Display the time remaining for logging out.
- Action**                                You can click **Drop** to drop certain login user from the router's SSL Portal UI.

## 3.15 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: Status, Administrator Password, Configuration Backup, Syslog, Time setup, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade.

Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



### 3.15.1 System Status

The **System Status** provides basic network settings of Vigor router. It includes LAN and WAN interface information. Also, you could get the current running firmware version or firmware related information from this presentation.

System Status			
<b>Model Name</b>	: Vigor2930VSn		
<b>Firmware Version</b>	: v3.3.0		
<b>Build Date/Time</b>	: Wed Aug 11 18:50:1.1 2010		
<b>System</b>			
CPU Usage	: 2 %		
Total Memory	: 64M		
Memory usage	: 22 %		
<b>LAN</b>			
MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-C2-7F-48		
1st IP Address	: 192.168.1.1		
1st Subnet Mask	: 255.255.255.0		
DHCP Server	: Yes		
Primary DNS	:		
Secondary DNS	:		
<b>VoIP</b>			
Port	Profile	Reg.	In/Out
Phone1		No	0/0
Phone2		No	0/0
ISDN1-S0		No	0/0
ISDN2-TE		No	0/0
<b>WAN 1</b>			
Link Status	: <b>Connected</b>		
MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-C2-7F-49		
Connection	: Static IP		
IP Address	: 172.16.3.102		
Default Gateway	: 172.16.3.1		
Primary DNS	: 168.95.1.1		
Secondary DNS	:		
Mode	: NAT		
<b>WAN 2</b>			
Link Status	: <b>Disconnected</b>		
MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-C2-7F-4A		
Connection	: ---		
IP Address	: ---		
Default Gateway	: ---		
Primary DNS	:		
Secondary DNS	:		
Mode	: NAT		
<b>Wireless LAN</b>			
MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-C2-7F-48		
Frequency Domain	: Europe		

<b>Model Name</b>	Display the model name of the router.
<b>Firmware Version</b>	Display the firmware version of the router.
<b>Build Date/Time</b>	Display the date and time of the current firmware build.
<b>System ---</b>	
<b>CPU Usage</b>	Display current usage of CPU.
<b>Total Memory</b>	Display the total memory of your hard disk.
<b>Memory Usage</b>	Display current usage of memory.
<b>LAN ---</b>	
<b>MAC Address</b>	Display the MAC address of the LAN Interface.
<b>1<sup>st</sup> IP Address</b>	Display the IP address of the LAN interface.

<b>1<sup>st</sup> Subnet Mask</b>	Display the subnet mask address of the LAN interface.
<b>DHCP Server</b>	Display the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface.
<b>DNS</b>	Display the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.
<b>WAN1/WAN2 ---</b>	
<b>Link Status</b>	Display the connection status.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Display the MAC address of the WAN Interface.
<b>Connection</b>	Display the connection mode used currently.
<b>IP Address</b>	Display the IP address of the WAN interface.
<b>Default Gateway</b>	Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.
<b>Wireless LAN ---</b>	
<b>MAC Address</b>	Display the MAC address of the wireless LAN.
<b>Frequency Domain</b>	It can be Europe (13 usable channels), USA (11 usable channels) etc. The available channels supported by the wireless products in different countries are various.
<b>Firmware Version</b>	It indicates information about equipped WLAN miniPCi card. This also helps to provide availability of some features that are bound with some WLAN miniPCi card.

### 3.15.2 TR-069 Setting

Vigor router with TR-069 is available for matching with VigorACS server. Such page provides VigorACS and CPE settings under TR-069 protocol. All the settings configured here is for CPE to be controlled and managed with VigorACS server. Users need to type URL, username and password for the VigorACS server that such device will be connected. However URL, username and password under CPE client are fixed that users cannot change it. The default CPE username and password are "vigor" and "password". You will need it when you configure VigorACS server.

System Maintenance >> TR-069 Setting

#### ACS and CPE Settings

<b>ACS Server</b>	
URL	<input type="text"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
<b>CPE Client</b>	
<input type="radio"/> Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
URL	<input type="text" value="http://192.168.5.31:8069/cwm/CRN.html"/>
Port	<input type="text" value="8069"/>
Username	<input type="text" value="vigor"/>
Password	<input type="password" value="password"/>

#### Periodic Inform Settings

<input type="radio"/> Disable	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	
Interval Time	<input type="text" value="900"/> second(s)

#### STUN Settings

<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
<input type="radio"/> Enable	
Server IP	<input type="text"/>
Server Port	<input type="text" value="3478"/>
Minimum Keep Alive Period	<input type="text" value="60"/> second(s)
Maximum Keep Alive Period	<input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)

OK

#### ACS Server

Such data must be typed according to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) you want to link. Please refer to VigorACS user's manual for detailed information.

**URL** - Type the URL for VigorACS server.

If the connected CPE needs to be authenticated, please set URL as the following and type username and password for VigorACS server:

**http://{IP address of VigorACS}:8080/ACSServer/services/ACSServlet**

If the connected CPE does not need to be authenticated please set URL as the following:

**http://{IP address of VigorACS}:8080/ACSServer/services/UnAuthACSServlet**

**Username/Password** - Type username and password for ACS Server for authentication. For example, if you want to use such CPE with VigorACS, you can type as the following:

**Username:** *acs*

**Password:** *password*

### CPE Client

It is not necessary for you to type them. Such information is useful for Auto Configuration Server.

**Enable/Disable** – Sometimes, port conflict might be occurred. To solve such problem, you might want to change port number for CPE. Please click **Enable** and change the port number.

### Periodic Inform Settings

**Disable** – The system will not send inform message to ACS server.

**Enable** – The system will send inform message to ACS server periodically (with the time set in the box of interval time).

The default setting is **Enable**. Please set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. Or click **Disable** to close the mechanism of notification.

### STUN Settings

**Disable** – The system will not send connection request binding message to STUN server. The default setting is **Disable**.

**Enable** –The system will send connection request binding message to STUN server.

**Server IP** – Type the domain name or IP address of the STUN server.

**Server Port** –Type the server port. The default setting is 3478.

**Minimum Keep Alive Period** – The default setting is 60 seconds. It determines the minimum period that the STUN binding request must be sent by the CPE to maintain the binding.

**Maximum Keep Alive Period** - It determines the maximum period that the STUN binding request must be sent by the CPE to maintain the binding.

## 3.15.3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set new password.

[System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup](#)

### Administrator Password

Old Password	<input type="password"/>
New Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>

OK

### Old Password

Type in the old password. The factory default setting for password is blank.

**New Password** Type in new password in this field.

**Confirm Password** Type in the new password again.

When you click OK, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web configurator again.

### 3.15.4 Configuration Backup

#### Backup the Configuration

Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

**Configuration Backup / Restoration**

**Restoration**

Select a configuration file.

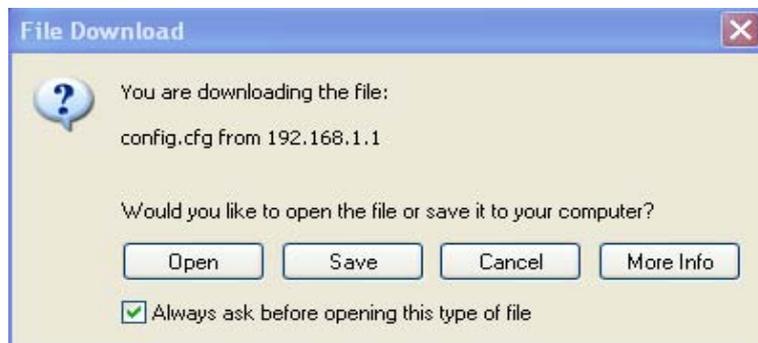
Click Restore to upload the file.

---

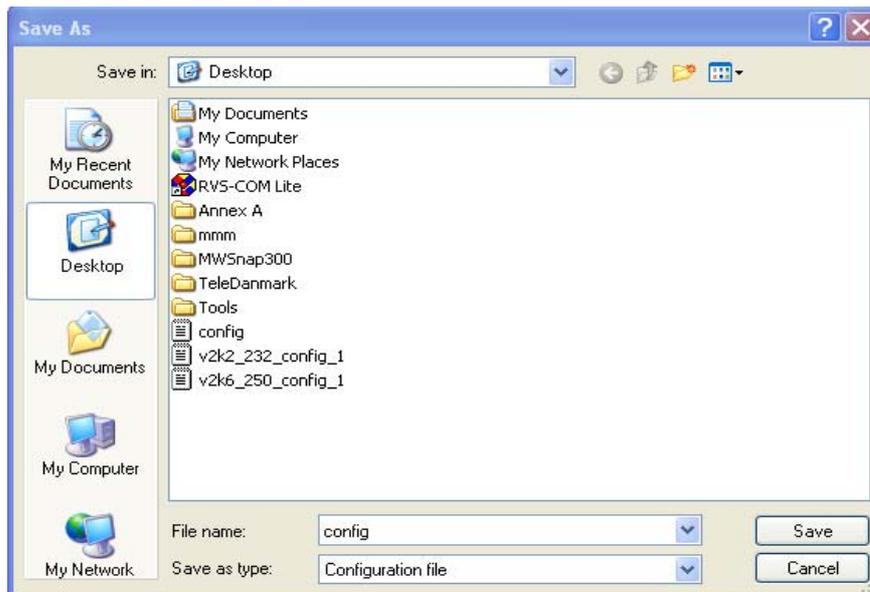
**Backup**

Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.

2. Click **Backup** button to get into the following dialog. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.



3. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is **config.cfg**. You could give it another name by yourself.



4. Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **config.cfg**.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.

**Note:** Backup for Certification must be done independently. The Configuration Backup does not include information of Certificate.

## Restore Configuration

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

**System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**

### Configuration Backup / Restoration

<b>Restoration</b>	
Select a configuration file.	<input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse.."/>
Click Restore to upload the file.	<input type="button" value="Restore"/>
<b>Backup</b>	
Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.	<input type="button" value="Backup"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

2. Click **Browse** button to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
3. Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

### 3.15.5 Syslog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router. There is no bother to directly get into the Web Configurator of the router or borrow debug equipments.

System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

**SysLog / Mail Alert Setup**

SysLog Access Setup	Mail Alert Setup
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>Router Name</b> <input type="text"/>	SMTP Server <input type="text"/>
Server IP Address <input type="text"/>	Mail To <input type="text"/>
Destination Port <input type="text" value="514"/>	Return-Path <input type="text"/>
Enable syslog message:	<input type="checkbox"/> Authentication
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log	User Name <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN Log	Password <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Access Log	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call Log	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN Log	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information	

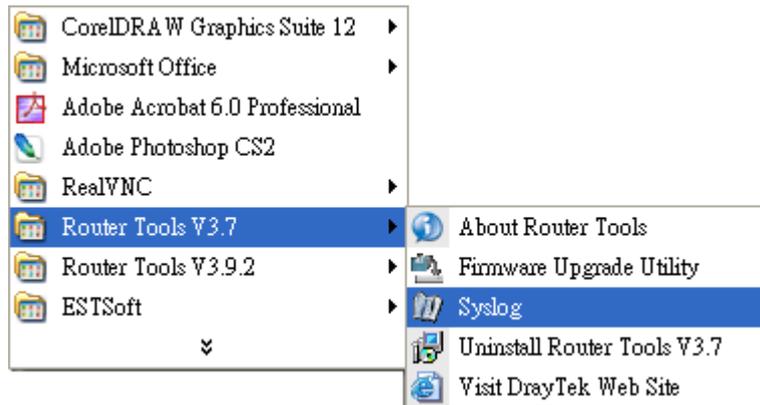
OK Clear Cancel

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Enable</b>                | Click “ <b>Enable</b> ” to activate this function.  |
| <b>Router Name</b>           | Type a name to represent the router.  |
| <b>Server IP Address</b>     | The IP address of the Syslog server.  |
| <b>Destination Port</b>      | Assign a port for the Syslog protocol.  |
| <b>Enable syslog message</b> | Check the box listed on this web page to send the corresponding message of firewall, VPN, User Access, Call, WAN, Router/DSL information to Syslog. |
| <b>SMTP Server</b>           | The IP address of the SMTP server.  |
| <b>Mail To</b>               | Assign a mail address for sending mails out.  |
| <b>Return-Path</b>           | Assign a path for receiving the mail from outside.  |
| <b>Authentication</b>        | Check this box to activate this function while using e-mail application.  |
| <b>User Name</b>             | Type the user name for authentication.  |
| <b>Password</b>              | Type the password for authentication.   |

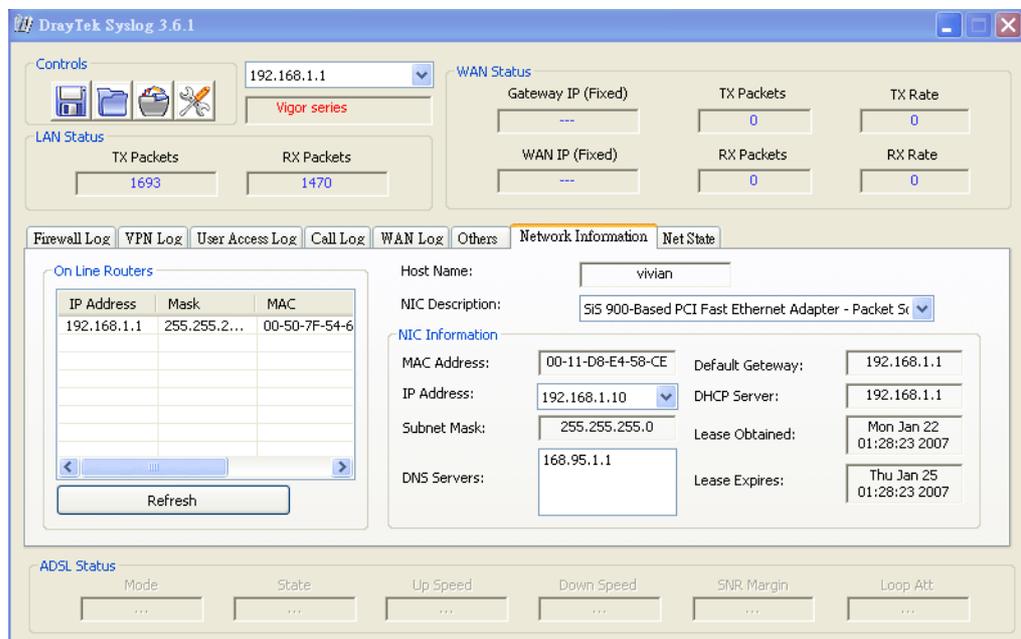
Click **OK** to save these settings.

For viewing the Syslog, please do the following:

1. Just set your monitor PC’s IP address in the field of Server IP Address
2. Install the Router Tools in the **Utility** within provided CD. After installation, click on the **Router Tools>>Syslog** from program menu.



- From the Syslog screen, select the router you want to monitor. Be reminded that in **Network Information**, select the network adapter used to connect to the router. Otherwise, you won't succeed in retrieving information from the router.



### 3.15.6 Time and Date

It allows you to specify where the time of the router should be inquired from.

**Time Information**

Current System Time	2007 Oct 17 Wed 8 : 3 : 19	Inquire Time
---------------------	----------------------------	--------------

**Time Setup**

<input type="radio"/> Use Browser Time	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Internet Time Client	
Time Protocol	NTP (RFC-1305) ▾
Server IP Address	pool.ntp.org
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin ▾
Enable Daylight Saving	<input type="checkbox"/>
Automatically Update Interval	30 min ▾

OK Cancel

**Current System Time**

Click **Inquire Time** to get the current time.

**Use Browser Time**

Select this option to use the browser time from the remote administrator PC host as router's system time.

**Use Internet Time**

Select to inquire time information from Time Server on the Internet using assigned protocol.

**Time Protocol**

Select a time protocol.

**Server IP Address**

Type the IP address of the time server.

**Time Zone**

Select the time zone where the router is located.

**Automatically Update Interval**

Select a time interval for updating from the NTP server.

Click **OK** to save these settings.

### 3.15.7 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for access control, access list, port setup, and SMP setup. For example, as to management access control, the port number is used to send/receive SIP message for building a session. The default value is 5060 and this must match with the peer Registrar when making VoIP calls.

System Maintenance >> Management

**Management Setup**

Router Name

---

**Management Access Control**

Allow management from the Internet

- FTP Server
- HTTP Server
- HTTPS Server
- Telnet Server
- SSH Server

Disable PING from the Internet

---

**Access List**

List	IP	Subnet Mask
1	<input type="text"/>	<input style="border-bottom: none; border-right: none; border-top: none; border-left: none; width: 100px;" type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input style="border-bottom: none; border-right: none; border-top: none; border-left: none; width: 100px;" type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input style="border-bottom: none; border-right: none; border-top: none; border-left: none; width: 100px;" type="text"/> <input type="button" value="v"/>

---

**Management Port Setup**

User Define Ports     Default Ports

Telnet Port  (Default: 23)

HTTP Port  (Default: 80)

HTTPS Port  (Default: 443)

FTP Port  (Default: 21)

SSH Port  (Default: 22)

---

**SNMP Setup**

Enable SNMP Agent

Get Community

Set Community

Manager Host IP

---

Trap Community

Notification Host IP

Trap Timeout  seconds

**Router Name**

Type a name to represent the router.

**Allow management from the Internet**

Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box (es) to specify.

**Disable PING from the Internet**

Check the checkbox to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is enabled by default.

**Access List**

You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.

**List IP** - Indicate an IP address allowed to login to the router.

**Subnet Mask** - Represent a subnet mask allowed to login to the router.

**Default Ports**

Check to use standard port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.

**User Defined Ports**

Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.

**Enable SNMP Agent**

Check it to enable this function.

<b>Get Community</b>	Set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. The default setting is <b>public</b> .
<b>Set Community</b>	Set community by typing a proper name. The default setting is <b>private</b> .
<b>Manager Host IP</b>	Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IP address to specify certain host.
<b>Trap Community</b>	Set trap community by typing a proper name. The default setting is <b>public</b> .
<b>Notification Host IP</b>	Set the IP address of the host that will receive the trap community.
<b>Trap Timeout</b>	The default setting is 10 seconds.

### 3.15.8 Reboot System

The Web Configurator may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to open the following page.

[System Maintenance >> Reboot System](#)

#### Reboot System

**Do You want to reboot your router ?**

Using current configuration  
 Using factory default configuration

If you want to reboot the router using the current configuration, check **Using current configuration** and click **OK**. To reset the router settings to default values, check **Using factory default configuration** and click **OK**. The router will take 5 seconds to reboot the system.

**Note:** When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click **OK** to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

### 3.15.9 Firmware Upgrade

Before upgrading your router firmware, you need to install the Router Tools. The **Firmware Upgrade Utility** is included in the tools. The following web page will guide you to upgrade firmware by using an example. Note that this example is running over Windows OS (Operating System).

Download the newest firmware from DrayTek's web site or FTP site. The DrayTek web site is [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) (or local DrayTek's web site) and FTP site is [ftp.draytek.com](ftp://ftp.draytek.com).

Click **System Maintenance>> Firmware Upgrade** to launch the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

**System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade**

---

#### Web Firmware Upgrade

Select a firmware file.

  
Click Upgrade to upload the file. 

#### TFTP Firmware Upgrade from LAN

Current Firmware Version: v3.3.0

**Firmware Upgrade Procedures:**

1. Click "OK" to start the TFTP server.
2. Open the Firmware Upgrade Utility or other 3-party TFTP client software.
3. Check that the firmware filename is correct.
4. Click "Upgrade" on the Firmware Upgrade Utility to start the upgrade.
5. After the upgrade is complete, the TFTP server will automatically stop running.

Do you want to upgrade firmware ?

Click **OK**. The following screen will appear. Please execute the firmware upgrade utility first.

**System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade**

---

 TFTP server is running. Please execute a Firmware Upgrade Utility software to upgrade router's firmware. This server will be closed by itself when the firmware upgrading finished.

For the detailed information about firmware update, please go to Chapter 4.

### 3.15.10 Activation

There are three ways to activate WCF on vigor router, using **Service Activation Wizard**, by means of **CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile** or via **System Maintenance>>Activation**.

After you have finished the setting profiles for WCF (refer to **Web Content Filter Profile**), it is the time to activate the mechanism for your computer.

Click **System Maintenance>>Activation** to open the following page for accessing <http://myvigor.draytek.com>.

**Web-Filter License**

[Activate](#)

[Status:Not Activated]

Authentication Message

```
WebFilter, service not activate 2010-10-12 00:43:33
```

**Note:** If you want to use email alert or syslog, please configure the [SysLog/Mail Alert Setup](#) page.  
If you change the service provider, the configuration of the function will be reset.

OK Cancel

**Activate via Interface**

Choose WAN interface used by such device for activating Web Content Filter.



**Activate**

The **Activate** link brings you accessing into [www.vigorpro.com](http://www.vigorpro.com) to finish the activation of the account and the router.

**Authentication Message**

As for authentication information of **web filter**, the process of authenticating will be displayed on this field for your reference.

## 3.16 Diagnostics

Diagnostic Tools provide a useful way to **view** or **diagnose** the status of your Vigor router.

Below shows the menu items for Diagnostics.



### 3.16.1 Dial-out Trigger

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Dial-out Trigger** to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., ISDN, PPPoE, PPPoA, etc) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

[Diagnostics >> Dial-out Trigger](#)

**Dial-out Triggered Packet Header**

| [Refresh](#) |

**HEX Format:**

```
00 50 7F 22 33 44-00 0E A6 2A D5 A1-08 00
```

```
45 00 00 4B BE 54 00 00-7F 11 12 3B C0 A8 01 0A  
A8 5F 01 01 05 CB 00 35-00 37 E3 91 01 74 01 00  
00 01 00 00 00 00 00 00-07 67 61 74 65 77 61 79  
09 6D 65 73 73 65 6E 67-65 72 07 68 6F 74 6D 61  
69 6C 03 63 6F 6D 00 00-01 00 01 E6 84 1A 00 00
```

**Decoded Format:**

```
192.168.1.10,1483 -> 168.95.1.1,domain  
Pr udp HLen 20 TLen 75
```

**Decoded Format**

It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package.

**Refresh**

Click it to reload the page.

### 3.16.2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

[Diagnostics >> View Routing Table](#)

**Current Running Routing Table** | [Refresh](#) |

```
Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
*          0.0.0.0/          0.0.0.0 via 172.16.3.1,  WAN1
C~        192.168.1.0/      255.255.255.0 is directly connected,  LAN
C         172.16.3.0/      255.255.255.0 is directly connected,  WAN1
```

**Refresh**

Click it to reload the page.

### 3.16.3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.

[Diagnostics >> View ARP Cache Table](#)

**Ethernet ARP Cache Table** | [Clear](#) | [Refresh](#) |

IP Address	MAC Address
192.168.1.10	00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1
172.16.3.112	00-40-CA-6B-56-BA
172.16.3.132	00-05-5D-E4-ED-86
172.16.3.20	00-0D-60-6F-83-BC
172.16.3.121	00-0C-6E-E7-79-99
172.16.3.141	00-11-2F-C7-39-0B
172.16.3.133	00-50-7F-23-4D-B1
172.16.3.179	00-11-2F-4B-15-F2
172.16.3.21	00-05-5D-A1-2E-FF
172.16.3.2	00-11-D8-68-0D-AE
172.16.3.18	00-50-FC-2F-3D-17
172.16.3.151	00-50-7F-2F-33-FF
172.16.3.19	00-0D-60-6F-89-CA

**Refresh**

Click it to reload the page.

**Clear**

Click it to clear the whole table.

### 3.16.4 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

[Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses](#)

DHCP IP Assignment Table					<a href="#">Refresh</a>
DHCP server: Running					
Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Leased Time	HOST ID	
1	192.168.1.10	00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1	0:00:02.630	ok-lccgjyiy075u	

- Index** It displays the connection item number.
- IP Address** It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC.
- MAC Address** It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it.
- Leased Time** It displays the leased time of the specified PC.
- HOST ID** It displays the host ID name of the specified PC.
- Refresh** Click it to reload the page.

### 3.16.5 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the setup page.

[Diagnostics >> NAT Sessions Table](#)

NAT Active Sessions Table				<a href="#">Refresh</a>
Private IP :Port	#Pseudo Port	Peer IP :Port	Interface	
192.168.1.11 2491	52078	24.9.93.189 443	WAN1	
192.168.1.11 2493	52080	207.46.25.2 80	WAN1	
192.168.1.10 3079	52665	207.46.5.10 80	WAN1	

- Private IP:Port** It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC.



Enable Data Flow Monitor Refresh Seconds: 10 Page: 1 | Refresh |

Index	IP Address	TX rate(Kbps)	RX rate(Kbps) v	Sessions	Action
		<b>Current / Peak / Speed</b>	<b>Current / Peak / Speed</b>	<b>Current / Peak</b>	
WAN1	172.16.3.229	1 / 1655 / Auto	1 / 852 / Auto	---	
WAN2	---	0 / 0 / Auto	0 / 0 / Auto	---	
<b>Total</b>		1 / 1655 / Auto	1 / 852 / Auto	6 / 44	

**Note:** 1. Click "Block" to prevent specified PC from surfing Internet for 5 minutes.  
 2. The IP blocked by the router will be shown in red, and the session column will display the remaining time that the specified IP will be blocked.  
 3. (Kbps): shared bandwidth  
 + : residual bandwidth used  
 Current/Peak are average.

**Enable Data Flow Monitor** Check this box to enable this function.  
**Refresh Seconds** Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically.

Refresh Seconds: 10 v

- 10
- 15
- 30

**Refresh** Click this link to refresh this page manually.  
**Index** Display the number of the data flow.  
**IP Address** Display the IP address of the monitored device.  
**TX rate (kbps)** Display the transmission speed of the monitored device.  
**RX rate (kbps)** Display the receiving speed of the monitored device.  
**Sessions** Display the session number that you specified in Limit Session web page.  
**Action** **Block** - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes.

Page: 1 v | Refresh |

(Kbps)	Sessions	Action
---	---	Block

**Unblock** – the device with the IP address will be blocked in five

minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column.

Page: 1	<a href="#">Refresh</a>
<u>Sessions</u>	<u>Action</u>
blocked / 299	<a href="#">Unblock</a>

**Current /Peak/Speed**

**Current** means current transmission rate and receiving rate for WAN1/WAN.

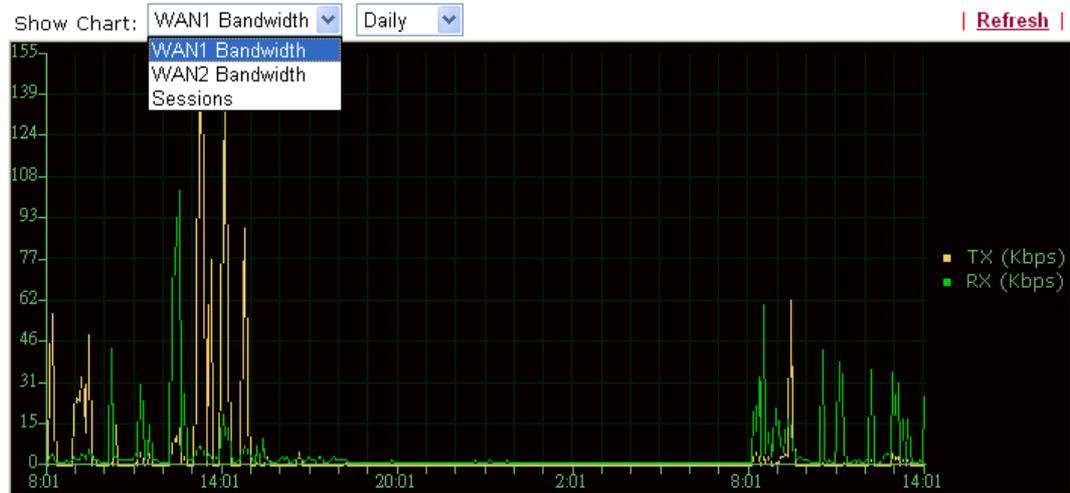
**Peak** means the highest peak value detected by the router in data transmission.

**Speed** means line speed specified in **WAN>>General**. If you do not specify any rate at that page, here will display **Auto** for instead.

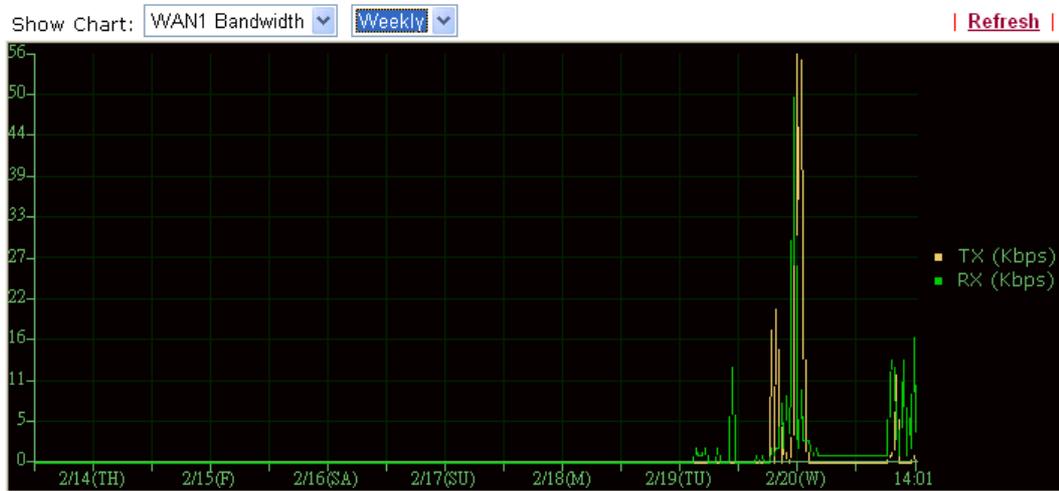
### 3.16.8 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to pen the web page. Choose WAN1 Bandwidth/WAN2 Bandwidth, Sessions, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time. The following two figures display different charts by daily and weekly.

[Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph](#)



[Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph](#)



The horizontal axis represents time. Yet the vertical axis has different meanings. For WAN1/WAN2 Bandwidth chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the transmitted and received packets in the past.

For Sessions chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the NAT sessions during the past.

### 3.16.9 Ping Diagnosis

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Ping Diagnosis** to pen the web page.

[Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis](#)

#### Ping Diagnosis

**Note:** If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN ping through, please select "Unspecified".

Ping through:

Ping to:  IP Address:

**Result** [Clear](#)

#### Ping through

Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose **Unspecified** to be determined by the router automatically.

Ping through:

- Unspecified
- WAN1
- WAN2

#### Ping to

Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping.

#### IP Address

Type in the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping.

#### Run

Click this button to start the ping work. The result will be displayed on the screen.

#### Clear

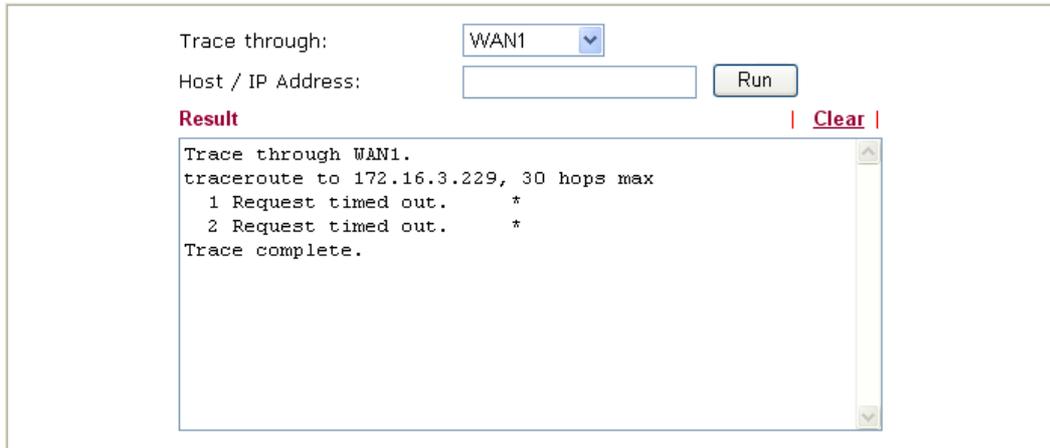
Click this link to remove the result on the window.

### 3.16.10 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply type the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.

[Diagnostics >> Trace Route](#)

#### Trace Route



Trace through:    
Host / IP Address:    
**Result** | [Clear](#) |  
Trace through WAN1.  
traceroute to 172.16.3.229, 30 hops max  
 1 Request timed out. \*  
 2 Request timed out. \*  
Trace complete.

#### Trace through

Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose **Unspecified** to be determined by the router automatically.

#### Host/IP Address

It indicates the IP address of the host.

#### Run

Click this button to start route tracing work.

#### Clear

Click this link to remove the result on the window.

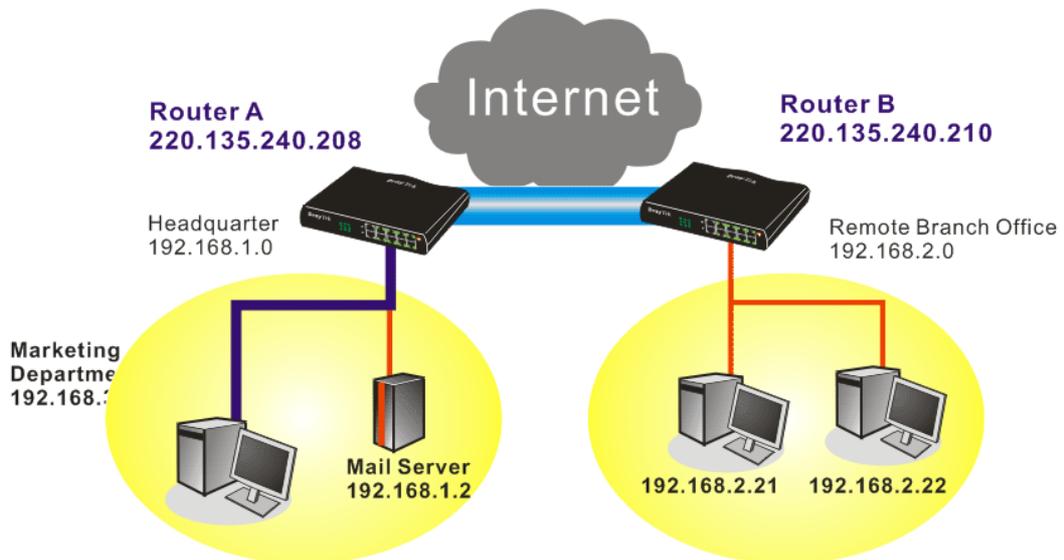
This page is left blank.

# 4

## Application and Examples

### 4.1 Create a LAN-to-LAN Connection Between Remote Office and Headquarter

The most common case is that you may want to connect to network securely, such as the remote branch office and headquarter. According to the network structure as shown in the below illustration, you may follow the steps to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. These two networks (LANs) should NOT have the same network address.



#### Settings in Router A in headquarter:

1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
2. Then,  
For using **PPP** based services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

##### PPP General Setup

<b>PPP/MP Protocol</b>	<b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users</b>
Dial-In PPP Authentication: PAP or CHAP	Start IP Address: 192.168.1.200
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE): Optional MPPE	
Mutual Authentication (PAP): <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	
Username: <input type="text"/>	
Password: <input type="text"/>	

OK

For using **IPSec**-based service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both

parties have known.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

##### VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	
Pre-Shared Key	<input type="text" value="•••••"/>
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	<input type="text" value="•••••"/>
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)	Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.
High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES	Data will be encrypted and authentic.
<input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

3. Go to **LAN-to-LAN**. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
4. Set **Common Settings** as shown below. You should enable both of VPN connections because any one of the parties may start the VPN connection.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

##### Profile Index : 1

##### 1. Common Settings

Profile Name <input type="text" value="Branch1"/>	Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-In
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile	<input type="checkbox"/> Always on
VPN Dial-Out Through: <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/>	Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)
Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive
Multicast via VPN <input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block (for some IGMP,IP-Camera,DHCP Relay..etc.)	PING to the IP <input type="text"/>

5. Set **Dial-Out Settings** as shown below to dial to connect to Router B aggressively with the selected Dial-Out method.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-Out connection.

## 2. Dial-Out Settings

<p><b>Type of Server I am calling</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> ISDN <input type="radio"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span></p> <p>Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)</p> <p><input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/></p>	<p>Link Type <span>64k bps</span></p> <p>Username <input type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <span>None</span></p> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span></p> <p><input type="button" value="Advanced"/></p> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback <input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote</p>
--	---

If a **PPP-based service** is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, PPP Authentication and VJ Compression for this Dial-Out connection.

## 2. Dial-Out Settings

<p><b>Type of Server I am calling</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> ISDN <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP <input type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span></p> <p>Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)</p> <p><input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/></p>	<p>Link Type <span>64k bps</span></p> <p>Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text" value="*****"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <span>None</span></p> <p><b>IPsec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH) <input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span></p> <p><input type="button" value="Advanced"/></p> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup: <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback <input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote</p>
--	--

- Set **Dial-In settings** to as shown below to allow Router B dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an **IPsec-based service** is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPsec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPsec General Setup** above.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN <input type="checkbox"/> pPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span>  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/>	Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="text"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off  <b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <span>None</span>  <b>IPsec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES  <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function <input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback Callback Number <input type="text"/> Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)
---	---

If a **PPP-based service** is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span>  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/>	Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/> Password <input type="text" value="*****"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off  <b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <span>None</span>  <b>IPsec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES  <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function <input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback Callback Number <input type="text"/> Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)
---	---

- At last, set the remote network IP/subnet in **TCP/IP Network Settings** so that Router A can direct the packets destined to the remote network to Router B via the VPN connection.

### 5. TCP/IP Network Settings

My WAN IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	RIP Direction <span>Disable</span>
Remote Gateway IP <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	From first subnet to remote network, you have to do
Remote Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.2.0"/>	<span>Route</span>
Remote Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )
Local Network IP <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>	
Local Network Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	
<input type="button" value="More"/>	

### Settings in Router B in the remote office:

1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
2. Then, for using **PPP based** services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

**PPP General Setup**

<b>PPP/MP Protocol</b>		<b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users</b>	
Dial-In PPP Authentication	PAP or CHAP	Start IP Address	192.168.2.200
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)	Optional MPPE		
Mutual Authentication (PAP)	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No		
Username	<input type="text"/>		
Password	<input type="text"/>		

For using **IPSec-based** service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

**VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup**  
Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	
Pre-Shared Key	<input type="text" value="....."/>
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	<input type="text" value="....."/>
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)	Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.
High (ESP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES
	Data will be encrypted and authentic.

3. Go to **LAN-to-LAN**. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
4. Set **Common Settings** as shown below. You should enable both of VPN connections because any one of the parties may start the VPN connection.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

**Profile Index : 1**  
**1. Common Settings**

Profile Name	Branch1	Call Direction	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-In
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile		<input type="checkbox"/> Always on	
VPN Dial-Out Through:	WAN1 First	Idle Timeout	300 second(s)
Netbios Naming Packet	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive	
Multicast via VPN (for some IGMP, IP-Camera, DHCP Relay..etc.)	<input type="radio"/> Pass <input checked="" type="radio"/> Block	PING to the IP	<input type="text"/>

- Set **Dial-Out Settings** as shown below to dial to connect to Router B aggressively with the selected Dial-Out method.

If an *IPSec-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-Out connection.

#### 2. Dial-Out Settings

<p><b>Type of Server I am calling</b></p> <p> <input type="radio"/> ISDN  <input type="radio"/> PPTP  <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPSec Tunnel  <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span> </p> <p>Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)</p> <p><input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/></p>	<p>Link Type <span>64k bps</span></p> <p>Username <input type="text" value="???"/></p> <p>Password <input type="password"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <hr/> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="password" value="•••••"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p><span>None</span></p> <hr/> <p><b>IPSec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span></p> <p><input type="button" value="Advanced"/></p> <hr/> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:</p> <p><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote</p>
---	--

If a *PPP-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, PPP Authentication and VJ Compression for this Dial-Out connection.

#### 2. Dial-Out Settings

<p><b>Type of Server I am calling</b></p> <p> <input type="radio"/> ISDN  <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP  <input type="radio"/> IPSec Tunnel  <input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span> </p> <p>Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)</p> <p><input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/></p>	<p>Link Type <span>64k bps</span></p> <p>Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/></p> <p>Password <input type="password" value="••••••"/></p> <p>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span></p> <p>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off</p> <hr/> <p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key</p> <p>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="password" value="•••••"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)</p> <p><span>None</span></p> <hr/> <p><b>IPSec Security Method</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)</p> <p><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span></p> <p><input type="button" value="Advanced"/></p> <hr/> <p>Index(1-15) in <b>Schedule</b> Setup:</p> <p><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote</p>
---	---

- Set **Dial-In settings** to as shown below to allow Router A dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPSec General Setup** above.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN <input type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/>	
Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="password"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off	<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <span>None</span>
<b>IPSec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES	
<b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function <input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback Callback Number <input type="text"/> Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)	

If a **PPP-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP <input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/>	
Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/> Password <input type="password" value="•••••"/> VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off	<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509) <span>None</span>
<b>IPSec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES	
<b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function <input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback Callback Number <input type="text"/> Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)	

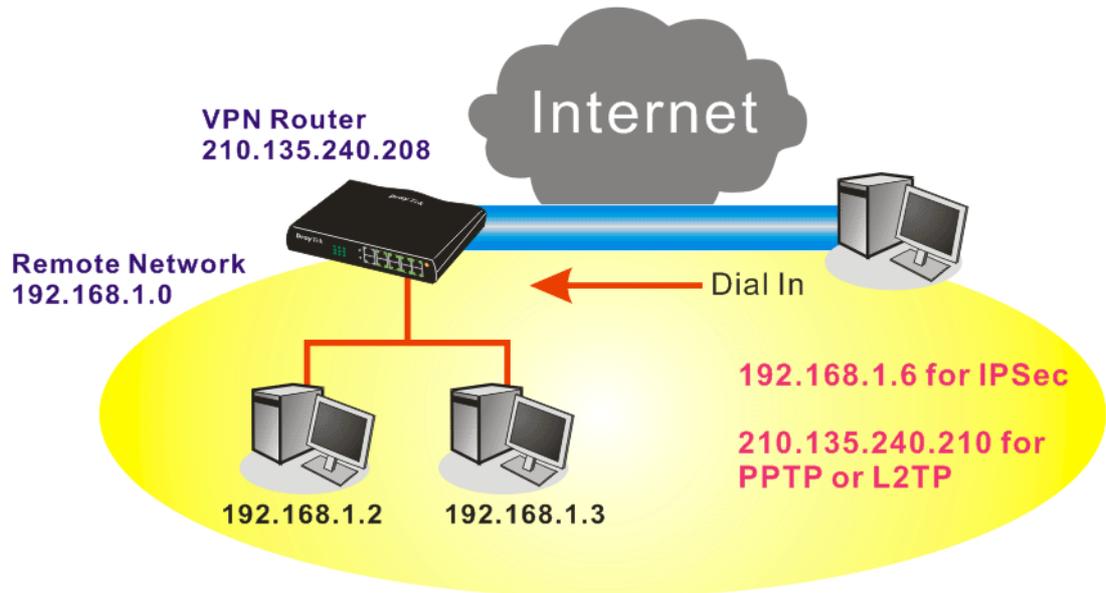
- At last, set the remote network IP/subnet in **TCP/IP Network Settings** so that Router B can direct the packets destined to the remote network to Router A via the VPN connection.

### 5. TCP/IP Network Settings

My WAN IP	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	RIP Direction	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
Remote Gateway IP	<input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>	From first subnet to remote network, you have to do	
Remote Network IP	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.0"/>	<input type="text" value="Route"/>	
Remote Network Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this )	
Local Network IP	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>		
Local Network Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>		
<input type="button" value="More"/>			

## 4.2 Create a Remote Dial-in User Connection Between the Teleworker and Headquarter

The other common case is that you, as a teleworker, may want to connect to the enterprise network securely. According to the network structure as shown in the below illustration, you may follow the steps to create a Remote User Profile and install Smart VPN Client on the remote host.



### Settings in VPN Router in the enterprise office:

1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
2. Then, for using PPP based services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

PPP General Setup	
<b>PPP/MP Protocol</b>	
Dial-In PPP Authentication	PAP or CHAP
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)	Optional MPPE
Mutual Authentication (PAP)	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
<b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users</b>	
Start IP Address	192.168.1.200

For using IPsec-based service, such as IPsec or L2TP with IPsec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IKE/IPsec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

<b>IKE Authentication Method</b>	
Pre-Shared Key	.....
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	.....
<b>IPSec Security Method</b>	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)	Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.
High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES	Data will be encrypted and authentic.

OK    Cancel

3. Go to **Remote Dial-In User**. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
4. Set **Dial-In** settings to as shown below to allow the remote user dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an *IPSec-based* service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPSec General Setup** above.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 1

<b>User account and Authentication</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)	Username <input type="text" value="???"/> Password <input type="text"/>
<b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN <input type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/>	<b>IKE Authentication Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509) <input type="text" value="None"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number <input type="text" value="210.135.240.210"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/>	<b>IPSec Security Method</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES Local ID <input type="text"/> (optional)
	<b>Callback Function</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback function <input type="checkbox"/> Specify the callback number Callback Number <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback Budget Control Callback Budget <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s)

OK    Clear    Cancel

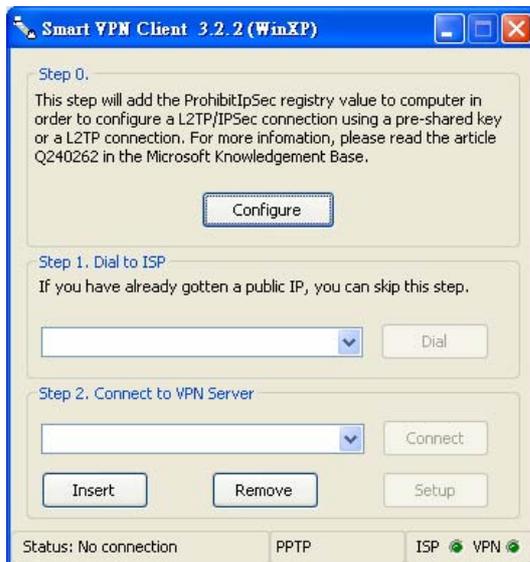
If a *PPP-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

**Index No. 1**

<p><b>User account and Authentication</b></p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)		Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/> Password <input type="password" value="••••••"/>
<p><b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b></p> <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP <input type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/>		<p><b>IKE Authentication Method</b></p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509) <input type="text" value="None"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number <input type="text" value="210.135.240.210"/> or Peer ID <input type="text"/>		<p><b>IPSec Security Method</b></p> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) <input type="checkbox"/> High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES Local ID <input type="text"/> (optional)
		<p><b>Callback Function</b></p> <input type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback function <input type="checkbox"/> Specify the callback number Callback Number <input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback Budget Control Callback Budget <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s)

**Settings in the remote host:**

1. For Win98/ME, you may use "Dial-up Networking" to create the PPTP tunnel to Vigor router. For Win2000/XP, please use "Network and Dial-up connections" or "Smart VPN Client", complimentary software to help you create PPTP, L2TP, and L2TP over IPSec tunnel. You can find it in CD-ROM in the package or go to [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) download center. Install as instructed.
2. After successful installation, for the first time user, you should click on the **Step 0. Configure** button. Reboot the host.



3. In **Step 2. Connect to VPN Server**, click **Insert** button to add a new entry.

If an IPSec-based service is selected as shown below,



**Dial To VPN**

Session Name: Office

VPN Server IP/HOST Name(such as 123.45.67.89 or draytek.com)

192.168.1.1

User Name : draytek\_user1

Password : \*\*\*\*\*

Type of VPN

PPTP  L2TP

IPSec Tunnel  L2TP over IPSec

PPTP Encryption

No encryption

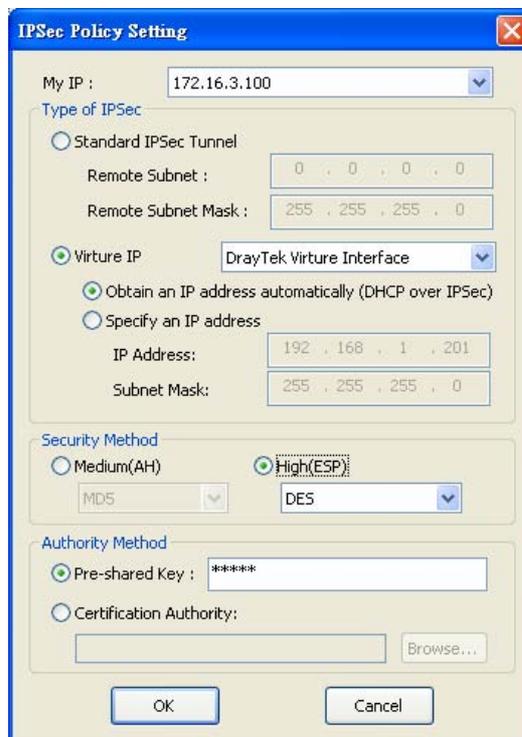
Require encryption

Maximum strength encryption

Use default gateway on remote network

OK Cancel

You may further specify the method you use to get IP, the security method, and authentication method. If the Pre-Shared Key is selected, it should be consistent with the one set in VPN router.



**IPSec Policy Setting**

My IP : 172.16.3.100

Type of IPSec

Standard IPSec Tunnel

Remote Subnet : 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Remote Subnet Mask : 255 . 255 . 255 . 0

Virture IP DrayTek Virture Interface

Obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP over IPSec)

Specify an IP address

IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 201

Subnet Mask: 255 . 255 . 255 . 0

Security Method

Medium(AH)  High(ESP)

MDS DES

Authority Method

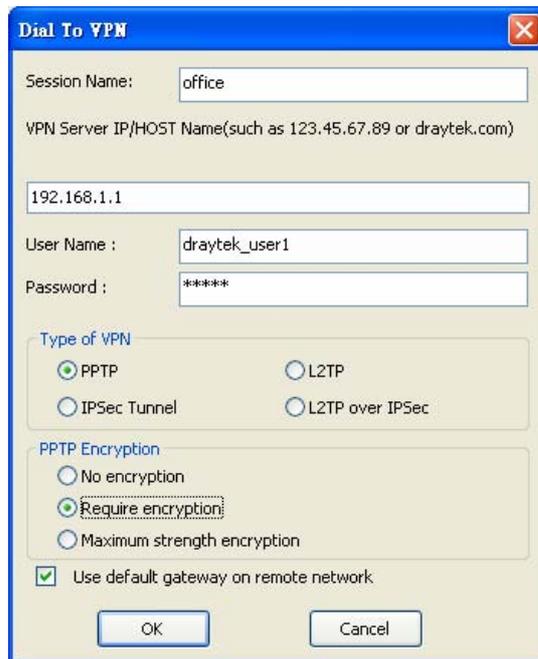
Pre-shared Key : \*\*\*\*\*

Certification Authority: Browse...

OK Cancel

If a PPP-based service is selected, you should further specify the remote VPN server IP address, Username, Password, and encryption method. The User Name and Password should be consistent with the one set up in the VPN router. To use default gateway on remote network means that all the packets of remote host will be directed to VPN

server then forwarded to Internet. This will make the remote host seem to be working in the enterprise network.



4. Click **Connect** button to build connection. When the connection is successful, you will find a green light on the right down corner.

### 4.3 QoS Setting Example

Assume a teleworker sometimes works at home and takes care of children. When working time, he would use Vigor router at home to connect to the server in the headquarter office downtown via either HTTPS or VPN to check email and access internal database. Meanwhile, children may chat on Skype in the restroom.

1. Go to **Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service**.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

#### General Setup

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Direction	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>

#### Class Rule

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 2		<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

2. Click **Setup** link of WAN 1. Make sure the QoS Control on the left corner is checked. And select **BOTH** in **Direction**.

**Enable the QoS Control** BOTH ▾

IN  
 OUT  
 BOTH

WAN Inbound Bandwidth

WAN Outbound Bandwidth

- Set Inbound/Outbound bandwidth.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

---

**WAN1 General Setup**

**Enable the QoS Control** BOTH ▾

WAN Inbound Bandwidth  Kbps

WAN Outbound Bandwidth  Kbps

**Note:** The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

- Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 1 by clicking **Edit** link. Type the name “**E-mail**” for Class 1.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

---

**Class Index #1**

Name

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Inactive	Any	Any	ANY	undefined

- For this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth (e.g., 25%) for E-mail using protocol POP3 and SMTP.

**Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service**

---

**WAN1 General Setup**

**Enable the QoS Control** BOTH ▾

WAN Inbound Bandwidth  Kbps

WAN Outbound Bandwidth  Kbps

Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	E-mail	<input type="text" value="25"/> %
Class 2		<input type="text" value="25"/> %
Class 3		<input type="text" value="25"/> %
	Others	<input type="text" value="25"/> %

Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %

Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

- Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 2 by clicking **Edit** link. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for HTTPS.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**Class Index #2**

Name

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 <input type="radio"/>	Active	Any	Any	ANY	ANY

- Click **Setup** link for WAN1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**General Setup** | [Set to Factory Default](#)

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>
WAN2	Disable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps		25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<a href="#">Setup</a>

**Class Rule**

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1	E-mail	<a href="#">Edit</a>	
Class 2	HTTPS	<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Class 3		<a href="#">Edit</a>	

- Check **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** on the bottom to prevent enormous UDP traffic of VoIP influent other application. Click **OK**.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**WAN1 General Setup**

**Enable the QoS Control**

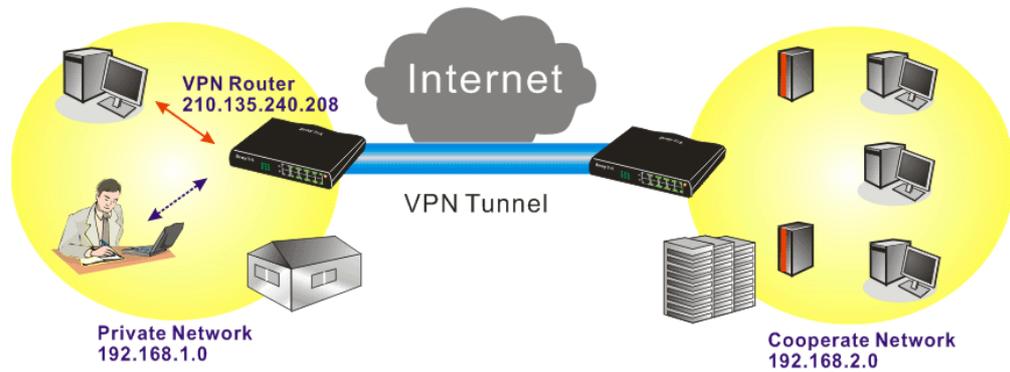
WAN Inbound Bandwidth  Kbps  
 WAN Outbound Bandwidth  Kbps

Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	E-mail	<input type="text" value="25"/> %
Class 2	HTTPS	<input type="text" value="25"/> %
Class 3		<input type="text" value="25"/> %
	Others	<input type="text" value="25"/> %

**Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %  
 Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

- If the worker has connected to the headquarter using host to host VPN tunnel. (Please refer to Chapter 3 VPN for detail instruction), he may set up an index for it. Enter the

Class Name of Index 3. In this index, he will set reserve bandwidth for 1 VPN tunnel.



- Click **Edit** to open a new window.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Index #1

Name

NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty	-	-	-	-

- First, check the **ACT** box.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Rule Edit

ACT

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

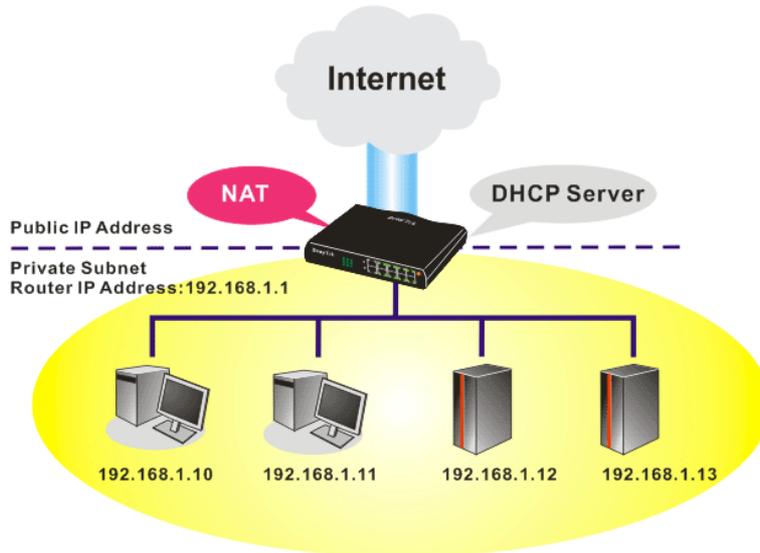
Service Type

**Note:** Please choose/setup the **Service Type** first.

- Then click **Edit** of **Local Address** to set a worker's subnet address. Click **Edit** of **Remote Address** to set headquarter's subnet address. Leave other fields and click **OK**.

## 4.4 LAN – Created by Using NAT

An example of default setting and the corresponding deployment are shown below. The default Vigor router private IP address/Subnet Mask is 192.168.1.1/255.255.255.0. The built-in DHCP server is enabled so it assigns every local NATed host an IP address of 192.168.1.x starting from 192.168.1.10.

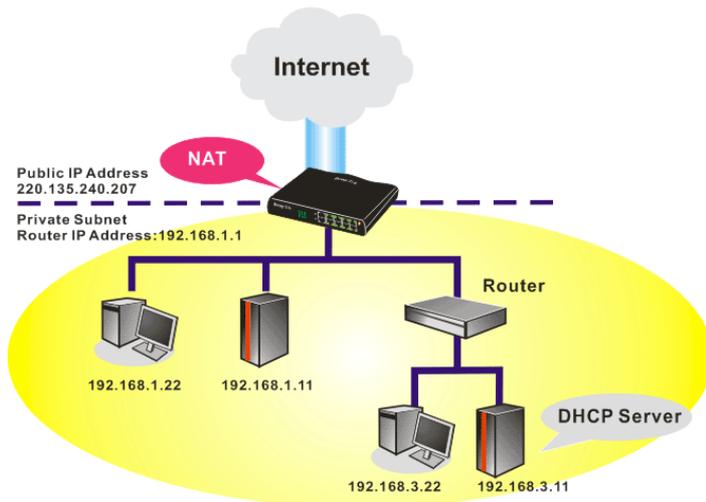


You can just set the settings wrapped inside the red rectangles to fit the request of NAT usage.

### LAN >> General Setup

Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup	
<b>LAN IP Network Configuration</b>	
For NAT Usage	
1st IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>
1st Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
For IP Routing Usage	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
2nd IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/>
2nd Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>
<input type="button" value="2nd Subnet DHCP Server"/>	
RIP Protocol Control	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
<b>DHCP Server Configuration</b>	
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Disable Server	
Relay Agent: <input type="radio"/> 1st Subnet <input type="radio"/> 2nd Subnet	
Start IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/>
IP Pool Counts	<input type="text" value="50"/>
Gateway IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/>
DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent	<input type="text"/>
<b>DNS Server IP Address</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Force DNS manual setting	
Primary IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Secondary IP Address	<input type="text"/>

To use another DHCP server in the network rather than the built-in one of Vigor Router, you have to change the settings as show below.



You can just set the settings wrapped inside the red rectangles to fit the request of NAT usage.

LAN >> General Setup

#### Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup

##### LAN IP Network Configuration

For NAT Usage

1st IP Address

1st Subnet Mask

For IP Routing Usage  Enable  Disable

2nd IP Address

2nd Subnet Mask

2nd Subnet DHCP Server

RIP Protocol Control

##### DHCP Server Configuration

Enable Server  Disable Server

Relay Agent:  1st Subnet  2nd Subnet

Start IP Address

IP Pool Counts

Gateway IP Address

DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent

##### DNS Server IP Address

Force DNS manual setting

Primary IP Address

Secondary IP Address

OK

## 4.5 Calling Scenario for VoIP function

### 4.5.1 Calling via SIP Sever

**Example 1: Both John and David have SIP Addresses from different service providers.**

John's SIP URL: 1234@draytel.org, David's SIP URL: 4321@iptel.org

#### Settings for John

DialPlan index 1  
Phone Number: 1111  
Display Name: David  
SIP URL: 4321@iptel.org

Phone Book Index No. 1

Enable

Phone Number: 1111

Display Name: David

SIP URL: 4321@iptel.org

Loop through: None

Backup Phone Number:

OK Clear Cancel

#### SIP Accounts Settings ---

Profile Name: draytel1  
Register via: Auto  
SIP Port: 5060 (default)  
Domain/Realm: draytel.org  
Proxy: draytel.org  
Act as outbound proxy: unchecked  
Display Name: John  
Account Number/Name: 1234  
Authentication ID: unchecked  
Password: \*\*\*\*  
Expiry Time: (use default value)

VoIP >> SIP Accounts

SIP Account Index No. 1

Profile Name: draytel1 (11 char max.)

Register via: Auto  make call without register

SIP Port: 5060

Domain/Realm: draytel.org (63 char max.)

Proxy: draytel.org (63 char max.)

Act as outbound proxy

Display Name: John (23 char max.)

Account Number/Name: 1234 (63 char max.)

Authentication ID

Password: \*\*\*\* (63 char max.)

Expiry Time: 1 hour 3600 sec

NAT Traversal Support: None

Ring Port:  VoIP1  VoIP2  ISDN

Ring Pattern: 1

OK Cancel

**CODEC/RTP/DTMF ---**  
(Use default value)

#### John calls David ---

He picks up the phone and dials 1111#. (DialPlan Phone Number for David)

#### Settings for David

DialPlan index 1  
Phone Number: 2222  
Display Name: John  
SIP URL: 1234@draytel.org

Phone Book Index No. 1

Enable

Phone Number: 2222

Display Name: John

SIP URL: 1234@draytel.org

Loop through: None

Backup Phone Number:

OK Clear Cancel

#### SIP Accounts Settings ---

Profile Name: iptel 1  
Register via: Auto  
SIP Port: 5060 (default)  
Domain/Realm: iptel.org  
Proxy: iptel.org  
Act as outbound proxy: unchecked  
Display Name: David  
Account Name: 4321  
Authentication ID: unchecked  
Password: \*\*\*\*  
Expiry Time: (use default value)

VoIP >> SIP Accounts

SIP Account Index No. 1

Profile Name: iptel 1 (11 char max.)

Register via: Auto  make call without register

SIP Port: 5060

Domain/Realm: iptel.org (63 char max.)

Proxy: iptel.org (63 char max.)

Act as outbound proxy

Display Name: David (23 char max.)

Account Number/Name: 4321 (63 char max.)

Authentication ID

Password: \*\*\*\* (63 char max.)

Expiry Time: 1 hour 3600 sec

NAT Traversal Support: None

Ring Port:  VoIP1  VoIP2  ISDN

Ring Pattern: 1

OK Cancel

**CODEC/RTP/DTMF ---**  
(Use default value)

#### David calls John

He picks up the phone and dials 2222# (DialPlan Phone Number for John)

**Example 2: Both John and David have SIP Addresses from the same service provider.**

John's SIP URL: 1234@draytel.org , David's SIP URL: 4321@draytel.org

**Settings for John**

DialPlan index 1  
Phone Number: 1111  
Display Name: David  
SIP URL: 4321@draytel.org

Phone Book Index No. 1

Enable

Phone Number: 1111  
Display Name: David  
SIP URL: 4321@draytel.org  
Loop through: None  
Backup Phone Number:

OK Clear Cancel

**SIP Accounts Settings ---**

Profile Name: draytel 1  
Register via: Auto  
SIP Port: 5060 (default)  
Domain/Realm: draytel.org  
Proxy: draytel.org  
Act as outbound proxy: unchecked  
Display Name: John  
Account Number/Name: 1234  
Authentication ID: unchecked  
Password: \*\*\*\*  
Expiry Time: (use default value)

VoIP >> SIP Accounts

SIP Account Index No. 1

Profile Name: draytel 1 (11 char max.)  
Register via: Auto  make call without register  
SIP Port: 5060  
Domain/Realm: draytel.org (63 char max.)  
Proxy: draytel.org (63 char max.)  
 Act as outbound proxy  
Display Name: John (23 char max.)  
Account Number/Name: 1234 (63 char max.)  
 Authentication ID (63 char max.)  
Password: \*\*\*\* (63 char max.)  
Expiry Time: 1 hour 3600 sec  
NAT Traversal Support: None  
Ring Port:  VoIP1  VoIP2  ISDN  
Ring Pattern: 1

OK Cancel

**CODEC/RTP/DTMF ---**  
(Use default value)

**John calls David**

He picks up the phone and dials 1111#. (DialPlan Phone Number for David) Or,  
He picks up the phone and dials 4321#. (David's Account Name)

**Settings for David**

DialPlan index 1  
Phone Number:2222  
Display Name: John  
SIP URL:1234@draytel.org

Phone Book Index No. 1

Enable

Phone Number: 2222  
Display Name: John  
SIP URL: 1234@draytel.org  
Loop through: None  
Backup Phone Number:

OK Clear Cancel

**SIP Accounts Settings ---**

Profile Name: John  
Register via: Auto  
SIP Port: 5060(default)  
Domain/Realm: draytel.org  
Proxy: iptel.org  
Act as outbound proxy: unchecked  
Display Name: David  
Account Name: 4321  
Authentication ID: unchecked  
Password: \*\*\*\*  
Expiry Time: (use default value)

VoIP >> SIP Accounts

SIP Account Index No. 1

Profile Name: draytel 1 (11 char max.)  
Register via: Auto  make call without register  
SIP Port: 5060  
Domain/Realm: draytel.org (63 char max.)  
Proxy: draytel.org (63 char max.)  
 Act as outbound proxy  
Display Name: David (23 char max.)  
Account Number/Name: 4321 (63 char max.)  
 Authentication ID (63 char max.)  
Password: (63 char max.)  
Expiry Time: 1 hour 3600 sec  
NAT Traversal Support: None  
Ring Port:  VoIP1  VoIP2  ISDN  
Ring Pattern: 1

OK Cancel

**CODEC/RTP/DTMF---**  
(Use default value)

**David calls John**

He picks up the phone and dials 2222# (DialPlan Phone Number for John) Or,  
He picks up the phone and dials 1234# (John's Account Name)

## 4.5.2 Peer-to-Peer Calling

Example 3: Arnor and Paulin have Vigor routers respectively, they can call each other *without* SIP Registrar. First they must have each other's IP address and assign an Account Name for the port used for calling.

Arnor's SIP URL: 1234@214.61.172.53      Paulin's SIP URL: 4321@ 203.69.175.24

### Settings for Arnor

DialPlan index 1  
 Phone Number: 1111  
 Display Name: paulin  
 SIP URL: 4321@ 203.69.175.24

### SIP Accounts Settings ---

Profile Name: Paulin  
 Register via: None  
 SIP Port: 5060(default)  
 Domain/Realm: (blank)  
 Proxy: (blank)  
 Act as outbound proxy: unchecked  
 Display Name: Arnor  
 Account Name: 1234  
 Authentication ID: unchecked  
 Password: (blank)  
 Expiry Time: (use default value)

### CODEC/RTP/DTMF---

(Use default value)

### Settings for Paulin

DialPlan index 1  
 Phone Number:2222  
 Display Name: Arnor  
 SIP URL: 1234@214.61.172.53

### SIP Accounts Settings ---

Profile Name: Arnor  
 Register via: None  
 SIP Port: 5060(default)  
 Domain/Realm: (blank)  
 Proxy: (blank)  
 Act as outbound proxy: unchecked  
 Display Name: Paulin  
 Account Name: 4321  
 Authentication ID: unchecked  
 Password: (blank)  
 Expiry Time: (use default value)

### CODEC/RTP/DTMF---

(Use default value)

**Phone Book Index No. 1**

Enable

Phone Number: 1111

Display Name: paulin

SIP URL: 4321 @203.69.175.24

Loop through: None

Backup Phone Number:

OK Clear Cancel

**VoIP >> SIP Accounts**

**SIP Account Index No. 1**

Profile Name: Paulin (11 char max.)

Register via: None  make call without register

SIP Port: 5060

Domain/Realm: (63 char max.)

Proxy: (63 char max.)

Act as outbound proxy

Display Name: Arnor (23 char max.)

Account Number/Name: 1234 (63 char max.)

Authentication ID (63 char max.)

Password: (63 char max.)

Expiry Time: 1 hour 3600 sec

NAT Traversal Support: None

Ring Port:  VoIP1  VoIP2  ISDN

Ring Pattern: 1

OK Cancel

### Arnor calls Paulin

He picks up the phone and dials 1111#. (DialPlan Phone Number for Arnor)

**VoIP >> DialPlan Setup**

**Phone Book Index No. 1**

Enable

Phone Number: 2222

Display Name: Arnor

SIP URL: 1234 @214.61.172.53

Loop through: None

Backup Phone Number:

**VoIP >> SIP Accounts**

**SIP Account Index No. 1**

Profile Name: Arnor (11 char max.)

Register via: None  make call without register

SIP Port: 5060

Domain/Realm: (63 char max.)

Proxy: (63 char max.)

Act as outbound proxy

Display Name: Paulin (23 char max.)

Account Number/Name: 4321 (63 char max.)

Authentication ID (63 char max.)

Password: (63 char max.)

Expiry Time: 1 hour 3600 sec

NAT Traversal Support: None

Ring Port:  VoIP1  VoIP2  ISDN

Ring Pattern: 1

OK Cancel

### Paulin calls Arnor

He picks up the phone and dials 2222# (DialPlan Phone Number for John)

## 4.6 Upgrade Firmware for Your Router

Before upgrading your router firmware, you need to install the Router Tools. The file **RTSxxx.exe** will be asked to copy onto your computer. Remember the place of storing the execution file.

1. Go to [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).
2. Access into **Support >> Downloads**. Please find out **Firmware** menu and click it. Search the model you have and click on it to download the newly update firmware for your router.

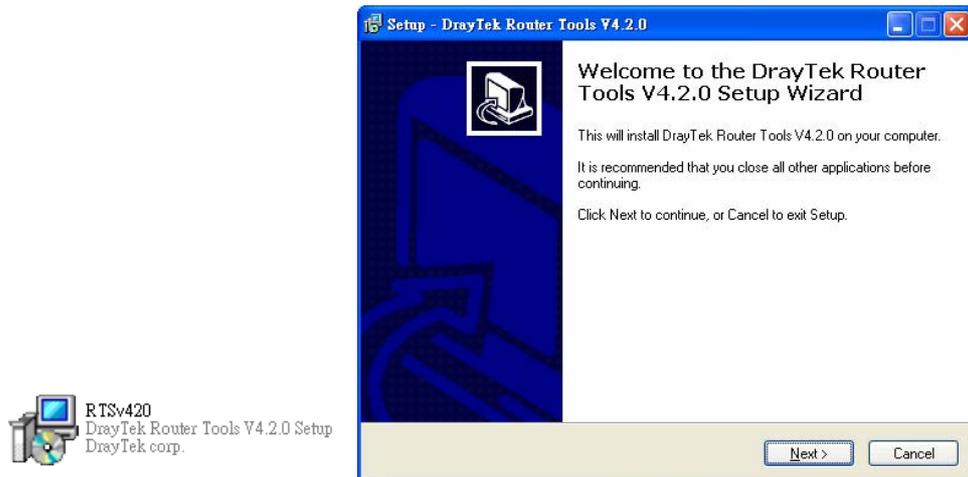
Model Name	Firmware Version	Release Date
Vigor120 series	3.2.2.1	26/06/2009
Vigor2100 series	2.6.2	26/02/2008
Vigor2104 series	2.5.7.3	13/02/2008
Vigor2110 series	3.3.0	25/06/2009
Vigor2200/X/W/E	2.3.11	22/09/2004
Vigor2200Eplus	2.5.7	18/02/2009
Vigor2200USB	2.3.10	16/03/2005

3. Access into **Support >> Downloads**. Please find out **Utility** menu and click it.

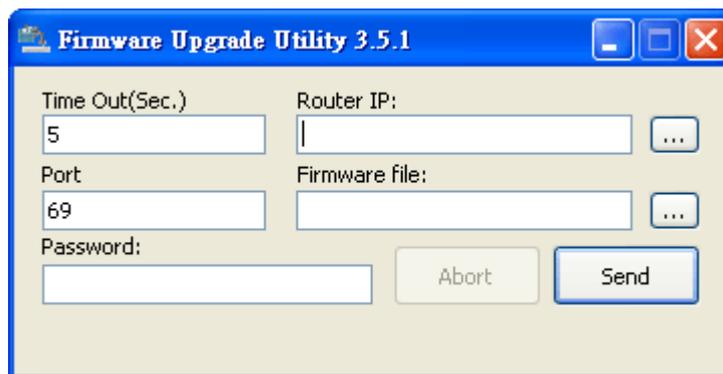
Tools Name	Release Date	Version	OS	Support Model
Router Tools	2009/06/18	4.2.0	MS-Windows	All Modules
Syslog Tools	2009/06/18	4.2.0	MS-Windows XP MS-Vista	All Modules
VigorPro Alert Notice Tools	2009/06/03	1.1.0 ( Multi-language )	MS-Windows XP MS-Vista	VigorPro 100 series VigorPro 5500 series VigorPro 5510 series VigorPro 5300 series
Smart VPN Client	2009/05/25	3.6.3 ( Multi-language )	MS-Windows XP MS-Vista	All Modules
Smart Monitor	2009/03/25	2.0	MS-Windows XP	Vigor2950 series VigorPro 5510 series

4. Click on the link of **Router Tools** to download the file. After downloading the files, please decompressed the file onto your host.

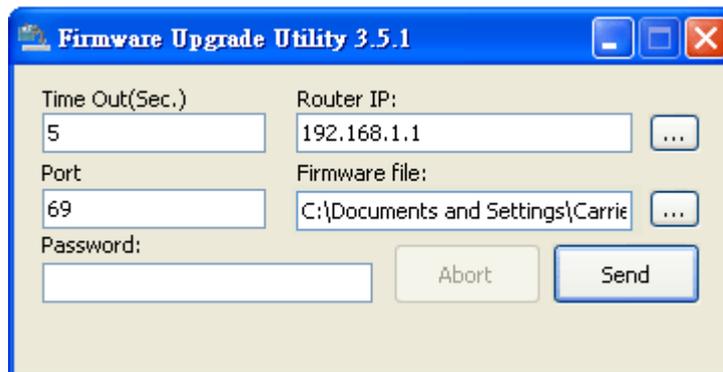
5. Double click on the router tool icon. The setup wizard will appear.



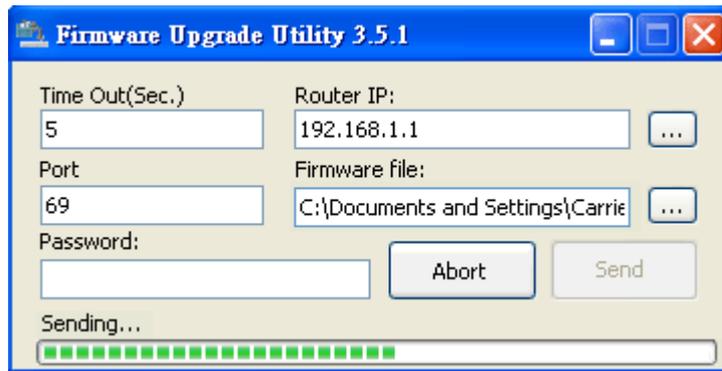
6. Follow the onscreen instructions to install the tool. Finally, click **Finish** to end the installation.
7. From the **Start** menu, open **Programs** and choose **Router Tools XXX >> Firmware Upgrade Utility**.



8. Type in your router IP, usually **192.168.1.1**.
9. Click the button to the right side of Firmware file typing box. Locate the files that you download from the company web sites. You will find out two files with different extension names, **xxxx.all** (keep the old custom settings) and **xxxx.rst** (reset all the custom settings to default settings). Choose any one of them that you need.

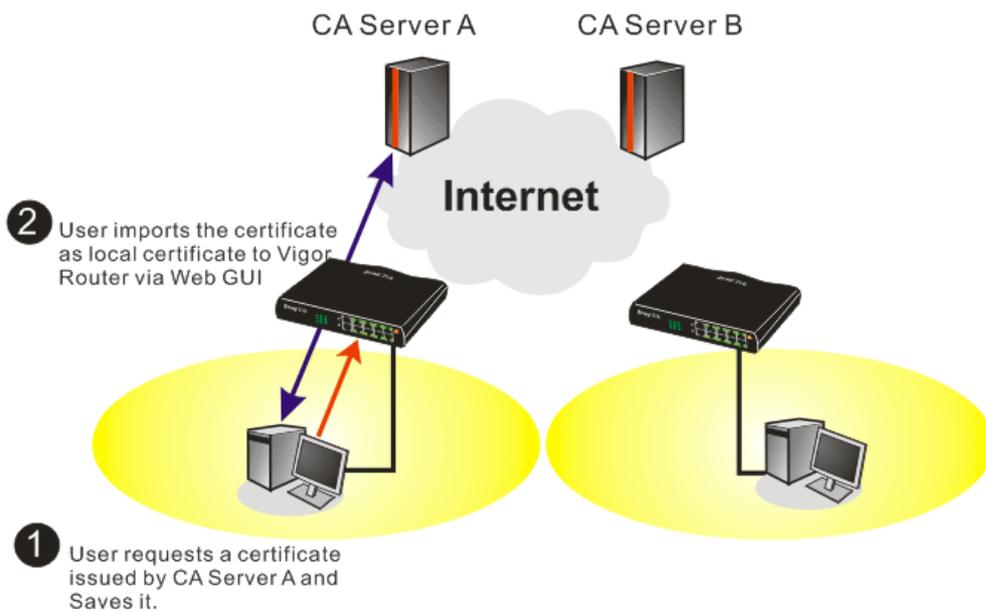


- Click **Send**.



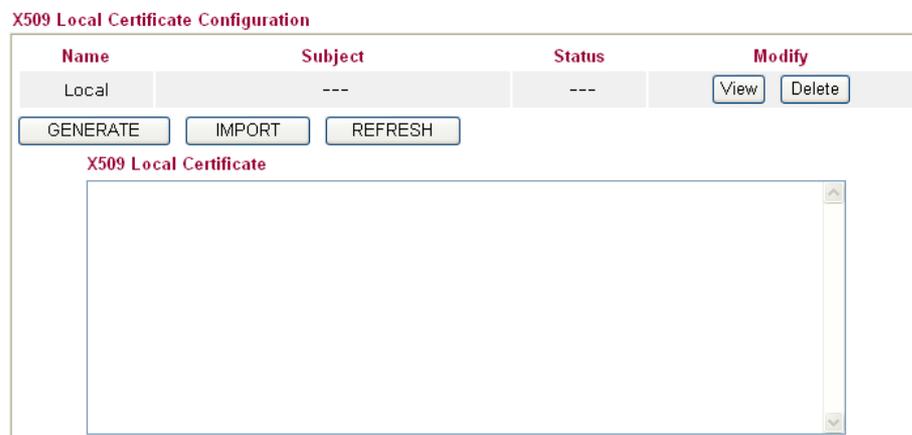
- Now the firmware update is finished.

## 4.7 Request a certificate from a CA server on Windows CA Server



- Go to **Certificate Management** and choose **Local Certificate**.

**Certificate Management >> Local Certificate**



- You can click **GENERATE** button to start to edit a certificate request. Enter the information in the certificate request.

[Certificate Management >> Local Certificate](#)

**Generate Certificate Request**

<b>Subject Alternative Name</b>	
Type	Domain Name
Domain Name	draytek.com
<b>Subject Name</b>	
Country (C)	TW
State (ST)	
Location (L)	
Organization (O)	Draytek
Organization Unit (OU)	
Common Name (CN)	
Email (E)	press@draytek.com
<b>Key Type</b>	RSA
<b>Key Size</b>	1024 Bit

- Copy and save the X509 Local Certificate Request as a text file and save it for later use.

[Certificate Management >> Local Certificate](#)

**X509 Local Certificate Configuration**

Name	Subject	Status	Modify
Local	/C=TW/O=Draytek/emailAddress...	Requesting	<input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**X509 Local Certificate Request**

```

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBqjCCARMAQAwQTElMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxEDAOBgNVBAAoTB0ryYX10ZWsxIDAe
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEXByZXRyYX10ZWsxOTZwY29tMIGfMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUA
A4GNADCBiQKBgQDPioahu/gfQaYB1ce5OERSDFWknIdHb1o1kt9cTdlUDaFk6e8d
3wDeQytoV1LBJz2IDF0xjX6ip7ev187twwTsg4lg26Qk/rGhuVTKd9j6P1crnkP7
du84t23tWBdMD4W5c8VmsSyDjShLhjdXVYPWpNKVlrOT2RZjkRMAHEWpVpwIDAQAB
oCkwJwYJKoZlIhvcNAQkOMRowGDAWBgNVHREEDzANgggtkcmF5dGVrLmNvb3RANBgkq
hkiG9w0BAQUFAAOBgQAUwBRUGt4W1hH9N6/HwToem1tHQbcwjXvg/t7kF1zTJiHh
uRLq4CiE16nV4hHRytcx2pE26sMar3gRREr86Ro08JxOI45560xCZ/N1Gh9VQ9I1
I9FqkjJNihp4TCjecSNNZjmQo5WU+Bce8TG+SCBCyejqqu/fo/BJQFajB7Gv1w==
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

```

- Connect to CA server via web browser. Follow the instruction to submit the request. Below we take a Windows 2000 CA server for example. Select **Request a Certificate**.

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

---

**Welcome**

You use this web site to request a certificate for your web browser, e-mail client, or other secure program. Once you acquire a certificate, you will be able to securely identify yourself to other people over the web, sign your e-mail messages, encrypt your e-mail messages, and more depending upon the type of certificate you request.

**Select a task:**

- Retrieve the CA certificate or certificate revocation list
- Request a certificate
- Check on a pending certificate

## Select **Advanced request**.

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

### Choose Request Type

Please select the type of request you would like to make:

User certificate request

Advanced request

[Next >](#)

## Select **Submit a certificate request a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a renewal request using a base64 encoded PKCS #7 file**

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

### Advanced Certificate Requests

You can request a certificate for yourself, another user, or a computer using one of the following methods. Note that the policy of the certification authority (CA) will determine the certificates that you can obtain.

Submit a certificate request to this CA using a form.

Submit a certificate request using a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a renewal request using a base64 encoded PKCS #7 file.

Request a certificate for a smart card on behalf of another user using the Smart Card Enrollment Station.  
*You must have an enrollment agent certificate to submit a request for another user.*

[Next >](#)

## Import the X509 Local Certificate Request text file. Select **Router (Offline request)** or **IPSec (Offline request)** below.

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

### Submit A Saved Request

Paste a base64 encoded PKCS #10 certificate request or PKCS #7 renewal request generated by an external application (such as a web server) into the request field to submit the request to the certification authority (CA).

**Saved Request:**

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBqjCCARhCAQAwQTElMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxEDAO
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEXBzY2NzQGRyYX10ZWsuY29t
A4GNADCB1QKBgQDQYB7mmZFfPhN9/ IeQnG03Xk++
hX4bp89cUF9d1oACGG1M/ tcBockdcZdPFfVIXcP3
x/ GOA7CTvO/ fQzpxroCw1JTjLSjSO/ Bn9v50951G
-----
```

[Browse for a file to insert.](#)

**Certificate Template:** Administrator

**Additional Attributes:** Administrator, Authenticated Session, Basic EFS, EFS Recovery Agent, User, **Router (Offline request)**, Subordinate Certification Authority, Web Server

[Submit >](#)

Then you have done the request and the server now issues you a certificate. Select **Base 64 encoded certificate** and **Download CA certificate**. Now you should get a certificate (.cer file) and save it.

5. Back to Vigor router, go to **Local Certificate**. Click **IMPORT** button and browse the file to import the certificate (.cer file) into Vigor router. When finished, click refresh

and you will find the below window showing “-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----.....”  
**Certificate Management >> Local Certificate**

**X509 Local Certificate Configuration**

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
Local	/C=TW/O=Draytek/emailAddress...	Not Valid Yet	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

**X509 Local Certificate Request**

```

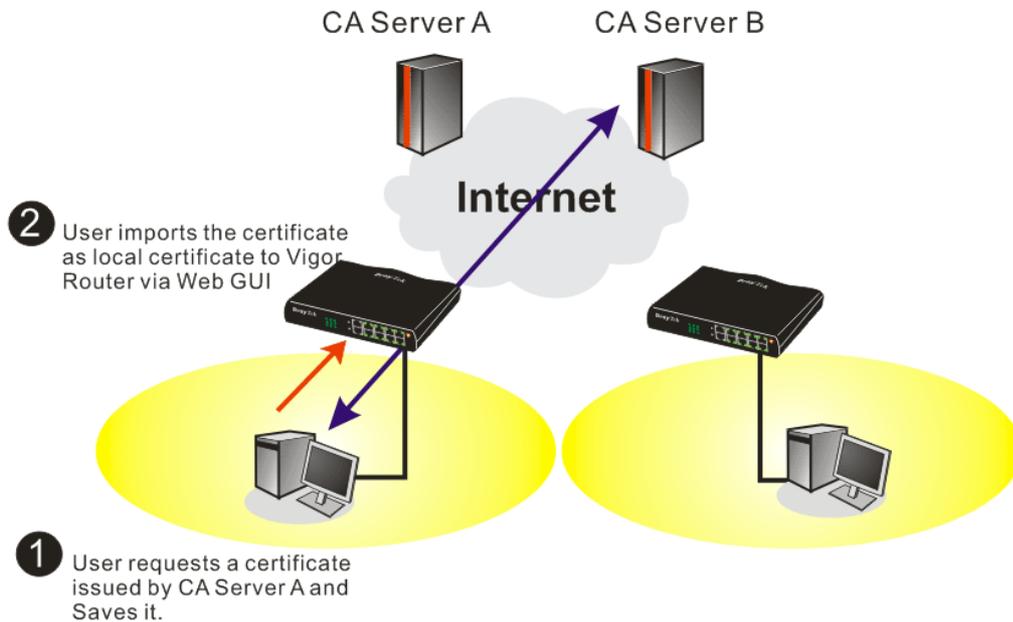
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBqjCCARMCQAwwQTELMakGA1UEBhMCVFcxEADAQBgNVBAoTBORyYX10ZWsxIDAe
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEWEXByZXNzQGRyYX10ZWsuY29tMIGfMAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUA
A4GNADCBiQKBgQDPioahu/gFQaYB1ce5OERSdfWknIdHb1o1kt9cTdLUDaFk6s8d
3wDeQytoV1LBJz2IDF0xjX6ip7ev187twwTsg4lgZ6Qk/rGhuVTKd9j6PlcrnkP7
du84t23tWBdMD4W5c8VmSyDjShLhjdXVYPWpNKVTrOT2RZjkRmaHEWpVpWIDAQAB
oCkwJwYJKoZlIhvcNAQkOMRowGDAWBgNVHREEDzANggtkcmF5dGVrLnNvbTANBgkq
hkiG9w0BAQUFAAOBgQAuSBRUGt4W1hH9N6/HwToem1tHQbcwjXvg/t7kFlzTjiHh
uRLq4CiE16nV4hMRytcxZpEZ6sMarSgRREr86Ro08JxOI45560xCZ/N1Gh9VQ9I1
I9FqkjJNihp4TCjecSNMZjmQo5WU+Bce8TG+SCBCyejqqu/fo/AJQFajB7Gvii==
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

```

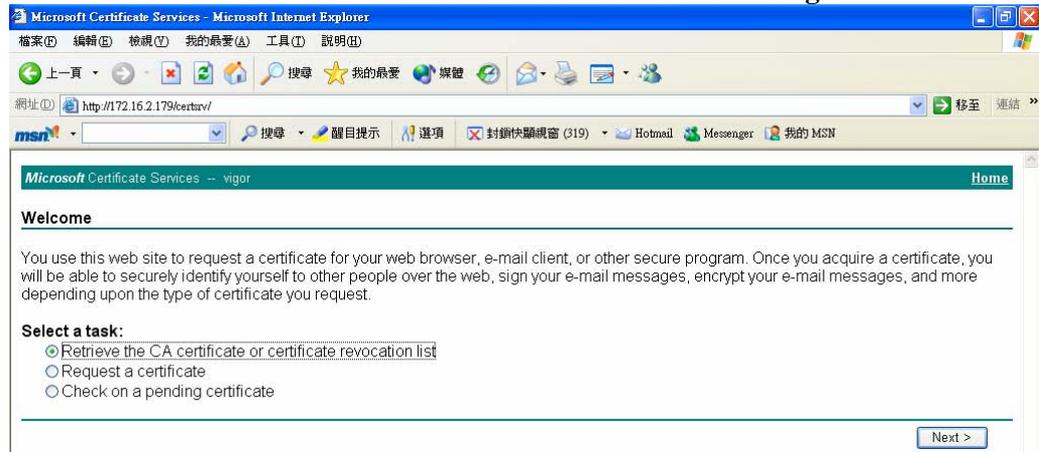
6. You may review the detail information of the certificate by clicking **View** button.

Name :	Local
Issuer :	/C=US/CN=vigor
Subject :	/emailAddress=press@draytek.com/C=TW/O=Draytek
Subject Alternative Name :	DNS: draytek.com
Valid From :	Aug 30 23:08:43 2005 GMT
Valid To :	Aug 30 23:17:47 2007 GMT

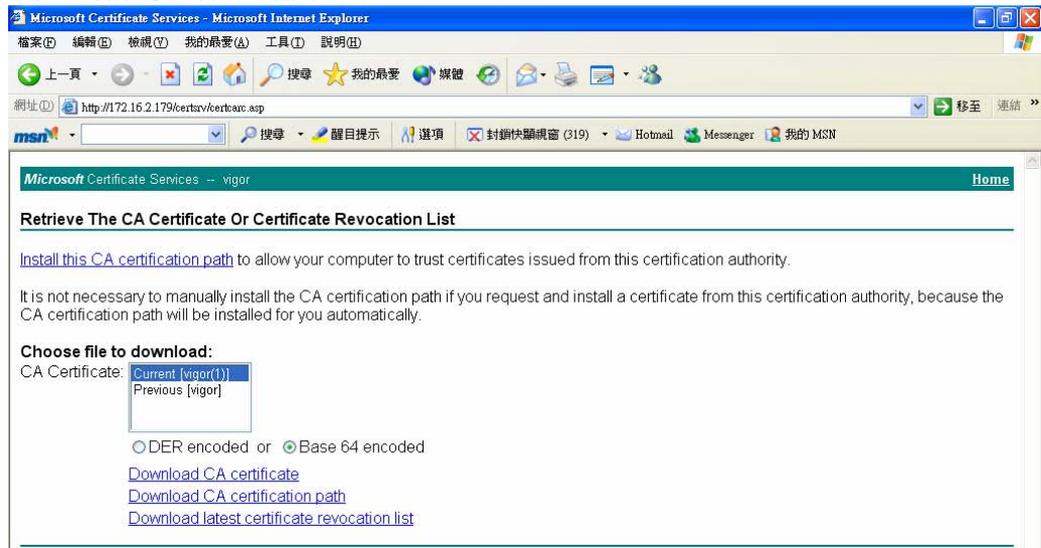
## 4.8 Request a CA Certificate and Set as Trusted on Windows CA Server



1. Use web browser connecting to the CA server that you would like to retrieve its CA certificate. Click **Retrieve the CA certificate or certificate recoring list**.



- In **Choose file to download**, click CA Certificate **Current** and **Base 64 encoded**, and **Download CA certificate** to save the .cer file.



- Back to Vigor router, go to **Trusted CA Certificate**. Click **IMPORT** button and browse the file to import the certificate (.cer file) into Vigor router. When finished, click refresh and you will find the below illustration.

**Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate**

**X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration**

Name	Subject	Status	Modify	
Trusted CA-1	/C=US/CN=vigor	Not Yet Valid	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Trusted CA-2	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
Trusted CA-3	---	---	<input type="button" value="View"/>	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>

- You may review the detail information of the certificate by clicking **View** button.

Name :	Trusted CA-1
Issuer :	/C=US/CN=vigor
Subject :	/C=US/CN=vigor
Subject Alternative Name :	DNS: draytek.com
Valid From :	Aug 30 23:08:43 2005 GMT
Valid To :	Aug 30 23:17:47 2007 GMT

**Note:** Before setting certificate configuration, please go to **System Maintenance >> Time and Date** to reset current time of the router first.

## 4.9 Creating an Account for MyVigor

The website of MyVigor (a server located on <http://myvigor.draytek.com>) provides several useful services (such as Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter, Anti-Intrusion, and etc.) to filtering the web pages for the sake of protecting your system.

To access into MyVigor for getting more information, please create an account for MyVigor.

### 4.9.1 Creating an Account via Vigor Router

1. Click CSM>> **Web Content Filter Profile**. The following page will appear.

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

---

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)  
[Status:Not Activated]

Setup Query Server	auto-selected	<a href="#">Find more</a>
Setup Test Server	auto-selected	<a href="#">Find more</a>

Web Content Filter Profile Table: | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<a href="#">1.</a>	Default	<a href="#">5.</a>	
<a href="#">2.</a>		<a href="#">6.</a>	
<a href="#">3.</a>		<a href="#">7.</a>	

Or

Click **System Maintenance>>Activation** to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Activation Activate via interface : auto-selected

---

Web-Filter License [Activate](#)  
[Status:Not Activated]

Authentication Message  
Activated Wiz, Authenticate is continuously, connect to the server, 2000-01-01 00:04:55

2. Click the **Activate** link. A login page for MyVigor web site will pop up automatically.

**This service is available for MyVigor member only. Please login to access MyVigor.  
If you are not one of the members of MyVigor, please create an account first.**

**LOGIN**

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code :

**AYi GXZ**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#).

[Forget password?](#)

---

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.  
Customer Service : (888) 3 597 2727 or  
email to : [webmaster@draytek.com](mailto:webmaster@draytek.com)

3. Click the link of **Create an account now**.
4. Check to confirm that you accept the Agreement and click **Accept**.

**Register**

**Create an account - Please enter personal profile.**

- 1 Agreement
- 2 Personal Information
- 3 Preferences
- 4 Completion

===== MyVigor Agreement =====

1. Agreement  
Draytek provides MyVigor(myvigor.draytek.com) service according to this agreement. When you use MyVigor service, it means that you have read, understand and agree to accept the items listed in this agreement. Draytek can modify or change the content of the items without any reasons. It is suggested for you to notice the modifications or changes at any time. If you still use MyVigor service after knowing the modifications and changes of this service, it means you have read, understand and agree to accept the modifications and changes. If you do not agree the content of this agreement, please stop using MyVigor service.

2. Registration  
To use this service, you have to agree the following conditions:  
(a) Provide your complete and correct information according to the registration steps of this service.  
(b) If you provide any incorrect or fake information here, DrayTek has the right to pause or terminate your service.

I have read and understand the above Agreement. (Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement)

5. Type your personal information in this page and then click **Continue**.

**Register**

Create an account - Please enter personal profile. (Fields marked by (\*) are required)

**1 Agreement**

**2 Personal Information**

**3 Preferences**

**4 Completion**

**Account Information**

UserName:\*    
(3 - 20 characters)

Password:\*   
(4 - 20 characters : Do not set the same as the username.)

Confirm Password:\*

**Personal Information**

First Name:\*

Last Name:\*

Company Name:

Email Address:\*   
Please note that a valid E-mail address is required to receive the Subscription Code. You will need this code to activate your account.

Tel:  -

Country:\*

Career:\*

6. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.

**Register**

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

**1 Agreement**

**2 Personal Information**

**3 Preferences**

**4 Completion**

How did you find out about this website?

What kind of anti-virus do you use?

I would like to subscribe to the MyVigor e-letter.

I would like to receive DrayTek product news.

Please select the mail server for receiving the verification mail.

7. Now you have created an account successfully. Click START.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

Completion

A confirmation email has been sent to **mary\_ted@tech.com**  
Please click on the activation link in the email  
to activate your account

**START**

8. Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

\*\*\*\*\* This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com. \*\*\*\*\*

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

9. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.

Register

Search for this site  GO

Register Confirm

Thank for your register in VigorPro Web Site  
The Register process is completed

Close Login

10. When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**.

**This service is available for MyVigor member only. Please login to access MyVigor. If you are not one of the members of MyVigor, please create an account first.**

LOGIN

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code :  **T4he1C**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forget password?](#)

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.  
Customer Service : (888) 3 597 2727 or  
email to :[webmaster@draytek.com](mailto:webmaster@draytek.com)

11. Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

#### 4.9.2 Creating an Account via MyVigor Web Site

1. Access into <http://myvigor.draytek.com>. Find the line of **Not registered yet?**. Then, click the link **Click here!** to access into next page.

**DrayTek** MyVigor Customer Survey

Home Search GO

**MyVigor for you**

MyVigor website replaces the VigorPro site as DrayTek's portal site for the latest products and services in network security, including Anti-Virus, Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter... etc. The products and functions that are supported in this site include:

VigorPro Unified Security Firewall series:

- Activation of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter license key
- Activation of DT Anti-Virus license key
- Activation of Kaspersky Anti-Virus license key
- Activation of Commtouch™ Anti-Spam license key and membership

Vigor routers (for models that support Commtouch™)

- Activation of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter license key

The MyVigor website contains a trial version of Commtouch™ GlobalView Web Content Filter, which allows the users to set filters to block out undesirable web pages in the Internet jungle.

More customer-oriented services are planned for MyVigor site for the near future.

Please use IE 5.0 or above (resolution 1024 \* 768 ) for best display. © DrayTek Corp.

Login

UserName

Password

AuthCode

If you can't read the AuthCode, [click here](#)

[Forget password?](#)

Not registered yet ? [Click here!](#)

2. Check to confirm that you accept the Agreement and click **Accept**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

MyVigor Agreement

1. Agreement

Draytek provides MyVigor(myvigor.draytek.com) service according to this agreement. When you use MyVigor service, it means that you have read, understand and agree to accept the items listed in this agreement. Draytek can modify or change the content of the items without any reasons. It is suggested for you to notice the medications or changes at any time. If you still use MyVigor service after knowing the modifications and changes of this service, it means you have read, understand and agree to accept the modifications and changes. If you do not agree the content of this agreement, please stop using MyVigor service.

2. Registration

To use this service, you have to agree the following conditions:

(a) Provide your complete and correct information according to the registration steps of this service.

(b) If you provide any incorrect or fake information here, DrayTek has the right to pause or terminate your account.

I have read and understand the above Agreement. (Use the scroll bar to view the entire agreement)

<< Back Accept >>

3. Type your personal information in this page and then click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile. (Fields marked by (\*) are required)

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

Account Information

UserName:\* Mary Check Account

(3 ~ 20 characters)

Password:\*

(4 ~ 20 characters : Do not set the same as the username.)

Confirm Password:\*

Personal Information

First Name:\* Mary

Last Name:\* Ted

Company Name: Tech Ltd.

Email Address:\* mary\_ted@tech.com

Please note that a valid E-mail address is required to receive the Subscription Code. You will need this code to activate your account.

Tel: 0 -

Country:\* SWITZERLAND

Career:\* Supervisor

<< Back Continue >>

4. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.

Register

Create an account - Please enter personal profile.

1 Agreement

2 Personal Information

3 Preferences

4 Completion

How did you find out about this website? Internet

What kind of anti-virus do you use? AntiVir

I would like to subscribe to the MyVigor e-letter.

I would like to receive DrayTek product news.

Please select the mail server for receiving the verification mail. Global Server

<< Back Continue >>

5. Now you have created an account successfully. Click START.



6. Check to see the confirmation *email* with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

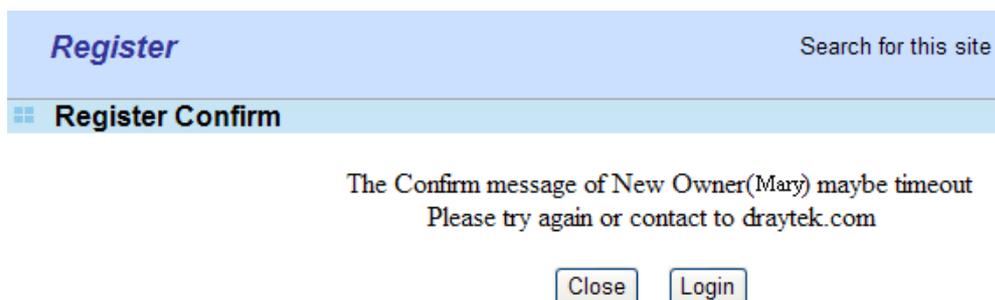
\*\*\*\*\* This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com.\*\*\*\*\*

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : [Activate my Account](#)

7. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.



- When you see the following page, please type in the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **UserName** and **Password**. Then type the code in the box of Auth Code according to the value displayed on the right side of it.

**This service is available for MyVigor member only. Please login to access MyVigor.  
If you are not one of the members of MyVigor, please create an account first.**

**LOGIN**

UserName :

Password :

Auth Code :  **T4he1C**

If you cannot read the word, [click here](#)

[Forget password?](#)

---

Don't have a MyVigor Account ? [Create an account now](#)

If you are having difficulty logging in, contact our customer service.  
Customer Service : (886) 3 597 2727 or  
email to :[webmaster@draytek.com](mailto:webmaster@draytek.com)

Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

This page is left blank.

# 5

## Trouble Shooting

This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

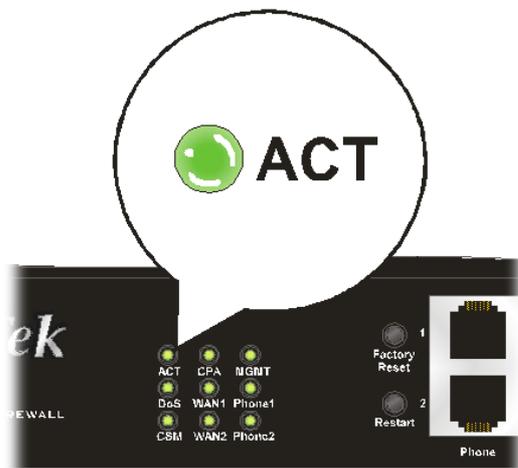
- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer for advanced help.

### 5.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections. Refer to “**2.1 Hardware Installation**” for details.
2. Turn on the router. Make sure the **ACT LED** blink once per second and the correspondent **LAN LED** is bright.



3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to “**2.1 Hardware Installation**” to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

## 5.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is still failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

### For Windows

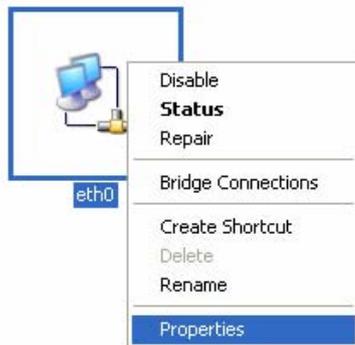


The example is based on Windows XP. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).

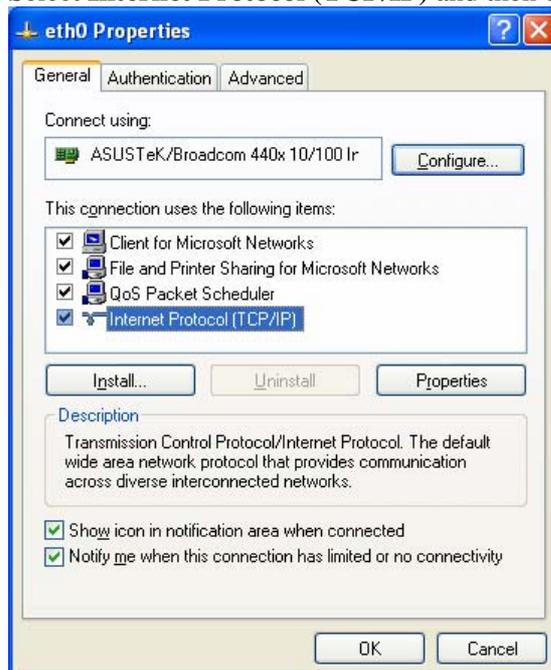
1. Go to **Control Panel** and then double-click on **Network Connections**.



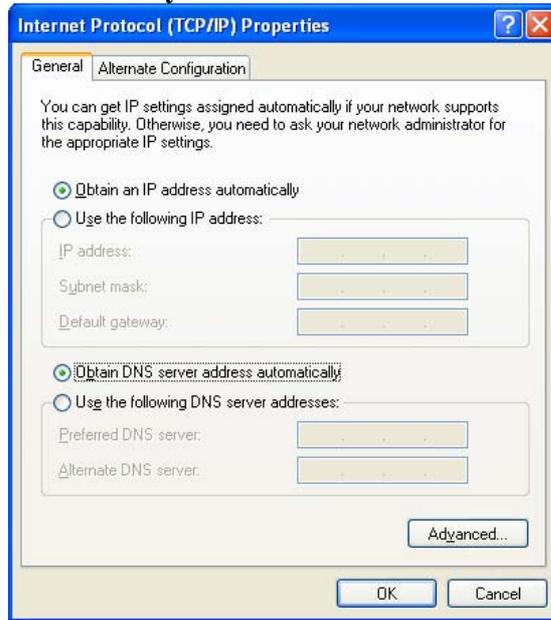
2. Right-click on **Local Area Connection** and click on **Properties**.



3. Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** and then click **Properties**.

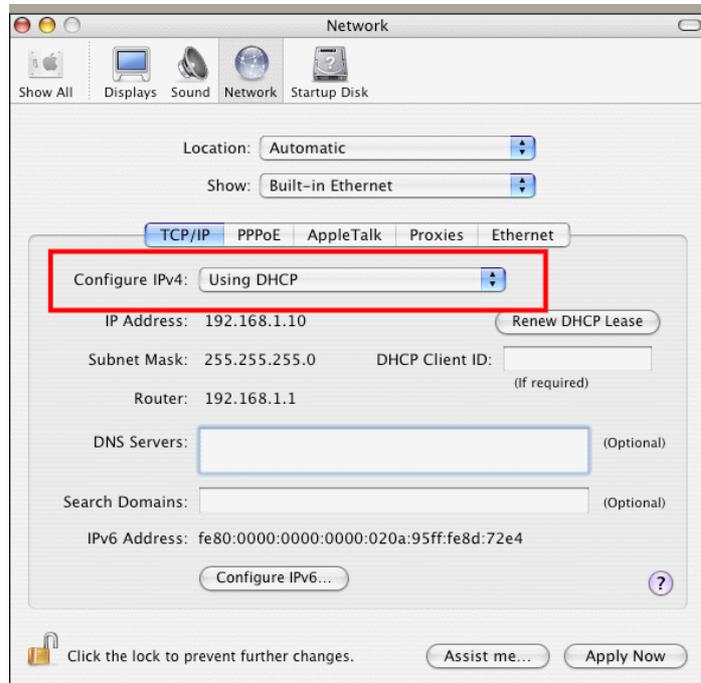


4. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**.



### For Mac OS

1. Double click on the current used Mac OS on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.



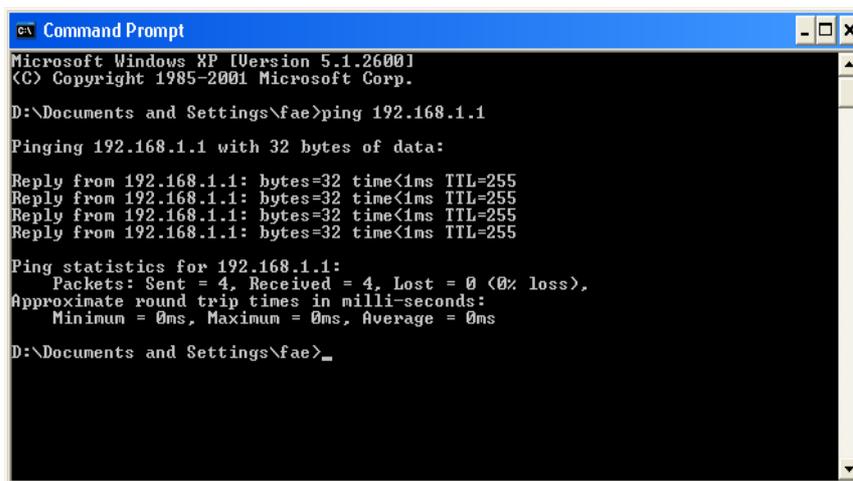
## 5.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use “ping” command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as **get IP automatically**. (Please refer to the section 5.2)

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

### For Windows

1. Open the **Command Prompt** window (from **Start menu**> **Run**).
2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP/Vista). The DOS command dialog will appear.



```
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>ping 192.168.1.1

Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255

Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>_
```

3. Type ping 192.168.1.1 and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “**Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255**” will appear.
4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

### For Mac OS (Terminal)

1. Double click on the current used Mac OS on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Utilities**.
3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of “**64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp\_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxxx ms**” will appear.

```

Terminal — bash — 80x24
Last login: Sat Jan  3 02:24:18 on ttty1
Welcome to Darwin!
Vigor10:~ draytek$ ping 192.168.1.1
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms
^C
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.697/0.723/0.755 ms
Vigor10:~ draytek$

```

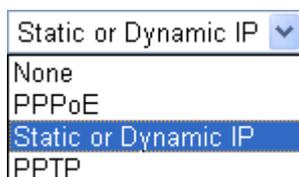
## 5.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

Click **WAN>> Internet Access** and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly. Click **Details Page** of WAN1/WAN2 to review the settings that you configured previously.

**WAN >> Internet Access**

### Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode	
WAN1		Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP	<a href="#">Details Page</a>
WAN2		Ethernet	None	<a href="#">Details Page</a>



## 5.5 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware.



**Warning:** After pressing **factory default setting**, you will lose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

### Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **OK**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.

### Reboot System

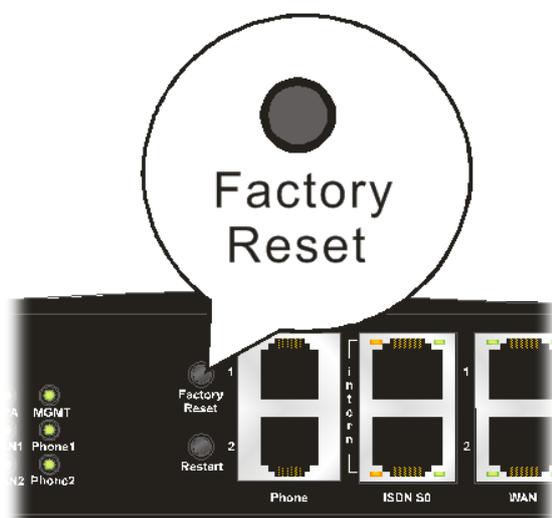
Do You want to reboot your router ?

- Using current configuration
- Using factory default configuration

OK

## Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the **Factory Reset** button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the **ACT LED** blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.



After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

## 5.6 Contacting Your Dealer

If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to [support@draytek.com](mailto:support@draytek.com).